
Fujitsu Scanner Control SDK

Version 2.3 L20

Reference Manual

- No part of the Product may be copied, reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or for any purpose without the permission of PFU Limited.
- The contents and specifications of this Product may be revised for improvement without prior notice.
- Customer shall assume all responsibilities for the use of and results obtained from the Product and manual.
- Should Customer have any questions concerning the contents of the Product, please feel free to contact our office.

Introduction

This manual explains information about the functions and sample source codes of Fujitsu Scanner Control SDK. Make sure you read the "Getting Started" before reading this manual. "Getting Started" explains the preparation for using Fujitsu Scanner Control SDK and the development procedures.

Refer to "Getting Started" for trademarks and abbreviations.

<Contents>

Introduction	II
--------------------	----

<Contents>.....	III
-----------------	-----

1. Reference	1
--------------------	---

1.1 Property	1
1.1.1 Property list.....	1
1.1.2 Example of use and conventions in this chapter.....	7
1.1.3 AdjustRGB Adjusting the brightness of each color (RGB) separately	8
1.1.4 AdjustRGBB Brightness of the Color Blue	9
1.1.5 AdjustRGBG Brightness of the Color Green	10
1.1.6 AdjustRGBR Brightness of the Color Red.....	11
1.1.7 ADTCThreshold Automatic (advanced) binary threshold	12
1.1.8 AIQCNotice Automatic Image Quality Checker setting	13
1.1.9 AIQCResult Acquire Automatic Image Quality Checker results.....	14
1.1.10 AutoBorderDetection automatic border detection	15
1.1.11 AutoBright Automatic adjustment of brightness-related image quality.....	16
1.1.12 AutomaticColorBackground setting auto color detection which ignores background color	17
1.1.13 AutomaticColorSensitivity Sensitivity for auto color detection.....	18
1.1.14 AutomaticRotateMode Mode for detecting the orientation of an image	19
1.1.15 AutomaticSenseMedium ADF / FB automatic switching	20
1.1.16 AutoProfile Applying a profile automatically	21
1.1.17 AutoProfileSensitivity Sensitivity level for identifying forms	22
1.1.18 AutoSeparation automatic image area separation	23
1.1.19 Background background tracking	24
1.1.20 BackgroundColor setting the background color (black background)	25
1.1.21 BackgroundSmoothing Background color smoothing(Color cleanup)	26
1.1.22 BackgroundSmoothness Background color smoothness(Color cleanup smoothness)	27
1.1.23 BackgroundThreshold Background color threshold	28
1.1.24 BarcodeDetection Barcode detection	29
1.1.25 BarcodeDirection Barcode detection direction setting	30
1.1.26 BarcodeMaxSearchPriorities Barcode maximum detection count setting	31
1.1.27 BarcodeNotDetectionNotice Barcode detection notification when a barcode is not detected	32
1.1.28 BarcodeRegionLeft Barcode detection area left edge position	33
1.1.29 BarcodeRegionLength Barcode detection area length	34
1.1.30 BarcodeRegionTop Barcode detection area top edge position	36
1.1.31 BarcodeRegionWidth Barcode detection area width.....	37
1.1.32 BarcodeType Barcode type setting	38
1.1.33 Binding duplex binding direction.....	40
1.1.34 BlankPageIgnoreAreaSize Sides undetected during blank page detection	41
1.1.35 BlankPageNotice Output blank page setting.....	42
1.1.36 BlankPageResult Get blank page detection results	43
1.1.37 BlankPageSkip Blank page skip sensitivity	44
1.1.38 BlankPageSkipMode Blank page skip mode.....	45
1.1.39 BlankPageSkipTabPage Blank page skip settings for index-tabbed pages	46
1.1.40 Brightness brightness	47
1.1.41 CarrierSheetClippingMode Carrier Sheet clipping mode	48
1.1.42 CharacterExtraction Extracting characters.....	49
1.1.43 CharacterExtractionMethod Setting the type of character extractions	50
1.1.44 CharacterThickness Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary character thickness setting	51
1.1.45 CloseSourceUI exit setting for the user interface (UI) of the source	52
1.1.46 ColorReproduction Color reproduction	53

1.1.47 ColorReproductionBrightness	Brightness when a color hue is prioritized.....	54
1.1.48 ColorReproductionContrast	Color contrast when a color hue is prioritized.....	55
1.1.49 ColorReproductionCustomGamma	Gamma value when a color hue is prioritized	56
1.1.50 ColorReproductionHighlight	Highlight when a color hue is prioritized.....	57
1.1.51 ColorReproductionShadow	Shadow when a color hue is prioritized.....	58
1.1.52 CompressionType	data compression type	59
1.1.53 Contrast	contrast	61
1.1.54 CropMarginSize	Sizes of cropping margins	62
1.1.55 CropPriority	Priority setting during automatic paper size detection.....	63
1.1.56 CustomGamma	custom gamma	64
1.1.57 CustomPaperLength	custom document length	65
1.1.58 CustomPaperWidth	custom document width.....	67
1.1.59 CustomResolution	custom resolution	68
1.1.60 Deskew	Skew correction	69
1.1.61 DeskewBackground	Background color used for skew correction	70
1.1.62 DeskewMode	Deskew mode	71
1.1.63 DigitalEndorser	Digital endorser setting	72
1.1.64 DigitalEndorserCountDirection	Digital endorser counter step direction setting.....	73
1.1.65 DigitalEndorserCounter	Digital endorser counter default value setting.....	74
1.1.66 DigitalEndorserCountStep	Digital endorser counter step value setting	75
1.1.67 DigitalEndorserDirection	Digital endorser output direction setting	76
1.1.68 DigitalEndorserString	Digital endorser character string setting	77
1.1.69 DigitalEndorserXOffset	Digital endorser output start position (X offset) setting.....	78
1.1.70 DigitalEndorserYOffset	Digital endorser output start position (Y offset) setting.....	79
1.1.71 DivideLongPage	Dividing long pages.....	80
1.1.72 DoubleFeed	double feed detection.....	81
1.1.73 DTCSensitivity	Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary sensitivity setting	82
1.1.74 EdgeFiller	Edge filler.....	83
1.1.75 EdgeFillerBottom	Edge filler bottom edge area setting	84
1.1.76 EdgeFillerLeft	Edge filler left edge area setting.....	85
1.1.77 EdgeFillerRight	Edge filler right edge area setting	86
1.1.78 EdgeFillerTop	Edge filler top edge area setting	87
1.1.79 EdgeRepair	Edge filler repair	88
1.1.80 Endorser	Endorser / Imprinter setting.....	89
1.1.81 EndorserCountDirection	Endorser / Imprinter counter step direction setting	90
1.1.82 EndorserCounter	Endorser / Imprinter counter default setting.....	91
1.1.83 EndorserCountStep	Endorser / Imprinter counter step count setting.....	93
1.1.84 EndorserDialog	Endorser / Imprinter print settings window	94
1.1.85 EndorserDirection	Endorser / Imprinter print direction setting.....	95
1.1.86 EndorserFont	Endorser / Imprinter print font setting	96
1.1.87 EndorserOffset	Endorser / Imprinter start print position setting	97
1.1.88 EndorserString	Endorser / Imprinter string setting	98
1.1.89 ErrorCode	Error information acquisition	100
1.1.90 FadingCompensation	Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary fading compensation.....	101
1.1.91 FileCounter	file serial number setting	102
1.1.92 FileCounter1, FileCounter2, FileCounter3	file serial number settings for files created from each output image	103
1.1.93 FileName	file name	105
1.1.94 FileName1, FileName2, FileName3	file names used for each output image	107
1.1.95 FileType	file format (image data format).....	109
1.1.96 Filter	dropout color.....	111
1.1.97 FilterSaturationSensitivity	Chromatic dropout color sensitivity setting	113
1.1.98 FrontBackDetection	ID card automatic detection	114
1.1.99 FrontBackMergingEnabled	Setting for merging the front and back side images	115
1.1.100 FrontBackMergingLocation	Setting for the way of merging the front and back side images.....	116
1.1.101 FrontBackMergingRotation	Setting for the angle to rotate the back side when merging the front and back side images.....	117
1.1.102 FrontBackMergingTarget	Setting a type of document whose front and back side	

images are to be merged	118
1.1.103 FrontBackMergingTargetMode Setting the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged	119
1.1.104 FrontBackMergingTargetSize Setting the length for the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back images are to be merged	121
1.1.105 Gamma gamma adjustment	122
1.1.106 GammaFile gamma pattern file name	123
1.1.107 Halftone halftone	124
1.1.108 HalftoneFile halftone pattern file	125
1.1.109 Highlight highlight	126
1.1.110 HwCompression Transfer mode of the hardware	127
1.1.111 ImageScanner image scanner name acquisition	128
1.1.112 Indicator progress indicator setting	129
1.1.113 IsExistsFB image scanner's flatbed (FB) support	130
1.1.114 JobControl job control setting	131
1.1.115 JobControlMode Job control type setting	133
1.1.116 JpegQuality Jpeg data compression level	134
1.1.117 LengthDetection Simultaneous setting of paper end detection / background color / overscan	135
1.1.118 LongPage Long document (long page) scan setting	136
1.1.119 Mirroring mirror image (flip horizontal)	137
1.1.120 MultiFeed multifeed detection	138
1.1.121 MultiFeedModeChangeSize Specifying the paper length to disable multifeed detection	139
1.1.122 MultiFeedNotice Multifeed notification setting	140
1.1.123 MultiFeedResult Getting the multifeed result	141
1.1.124 MultiStreamDefaultValueMode Mode for keeping the default value for each image	142
1.1.125 MultiStreamFileNameMode File name and file counter settings for a file created from each output image	144
1.1.126 MultiStreamMode Settings for outputting multiple images	145
1.1.127 NoiseRejection Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary noise removal	149
1.1.128 NoiseRemoval dust removal mode	150
1.1.129 Orientation document orientation setting	151
1.1.130 Outline outline correction	152
1.1.131 OverScan overscan setting	154
1.1.132 Overwrite file overwrite setting	155
1.1.133 PageCount scan page count acquisition	156
1.1.134 PageNumber Getting a page number	157
1.1.135 PaperProtection Paper Protection	158
1.1.136 PaperSize document size	159
1.1.137 PaperSupply paper feed method	161
1.1.138 ParentAppName specifying the parent application name	165
1.1.139 PatchCodeDetection Patch code detection	166
1.1.140 PatchCodeDirection Patch code detection direction setting	167
1.1.141 PatchCodeType Patch code type setting	168
1.1.142 PatternRemoval Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary pattern removal setting	169
1.1.143 PixelType pixel type	170
1.1.144 PreFiltering ballpoint pen filtering	172
1.1.145 PunchHoleRemoval Punch hole removal	173
1.1.146 PunchHoleRemovalMode Punch hole removal mode	174
1.1.147 RegionLeft Left Edge of the Scanning Area	175
1.1.148 RegionLength Length of the Scanning Area	176
1.1.149 RegionTop Top Edge of the Scanning Area	178
1.1.150 RegionWidth Width of the Scanning Area	179
1.1.151 Report Report Output	181
1.1.152 ReportFile Report File Name	182
1.1.153 Resolution Standard Resolution	183
1.1.154 Reverse Black and White Inversion / Color Inversion	184

1.1.155 Rotation Rotation Angle.....	185
1.1.156 ScanContinue Setting Continuous Scanning	186
1.1.157 ScanContinueMode Setting Continuous Scanning Method	187
1.1.158 ScanCount Number of Pages to be Scanned	188
1.1.159 ScanMode Scan mode	189
1.1.160 ScanTo Output Method of Scanned Data	190
1.1.161 SDTCSensitivity Automatic (simple) binary dispersion value.....	191
1.1.162 SEE Selectable Edge Enhancement	192
1.1.163 SelectOutputSize Selecting output size.....	193
1.1.164 Shadow shadow	194
1.1.165 Sharpness Sharpness	195
1.1.166 ShowSourceUI Source User Interface (UI) Display.....	197
1.1.167 SilentMode Silent Mode.....	199
1.1.168 SimpleSlicePatternRemoval Simple slice binary pattern removal setting	200
1.1.169 SkipBlackPage Skip Black Pages	201
1.1.170 SkipWhitePage Skip White Pages.....	203
1.1.171 Smoothing OCR Smoothing Mode / Background Removal.....	205
1.1.172 SourceCurrentScan Scan with the Source Current Value.....	206
1.1.173 sRGB sRGB output.....	208
1.1.174 SynchronizationDigitalEndorser Endorser / Imprinter and Digital Endorser synchronization function setting	209
1.1.175 Threshold Threshold.....	210
1.1.176 ThresholdCurve Density Curve in Automatic Binarization.....	211
1.1.177 TwainDS Data Source	212
1.1.178 TwainDSAnyPort Locking the Data Source Name	214
1.1.179 UndefinedScanning Scanning an Undefined Length (Paper End Detection).....	215
1.1.180 Unit unit of size (inch / centimeter / pixel).....	216
1.1.181 VerticalLineReduction Vertical line reduction setting	218
1.2 Methods.....	219
1.2.1 List of Methods	219
1.2.2 Examples and Notation Conventions in This Chapter	221
1.2.3 AboutBox Version Information Dialog Box Display	222
1.2.4 CancelScan Stopping an Image Scanning	223
1.2.5 ClearPage Document Ejection	224
1.2.6 CloseScanner Closing the Scanner.....	226
1.2.7 FeederLoaded Notifying Whether or Not a Document Is Loaded on the ADF	227
1.2.8 GetCapability Capability Acquisition.....	228
1.2.9 GetSerialNumber Obtaining a scanner serial number.....	229
1.2.10 GetSlpcTemplateCount Total Number of Templates Acquisition	230
1.2.11 GetSlpcTemplateName Template Name Acquisition	232
1.2.12 GetSlpcTemplateSelect Selected Template Number Acquisition	233
1.2.13 GetSourceCount Getting the total number of data source	234
1.2.14 GetSourceName Getting a data source name	236
1.2.15 GetSourceSelect Getting the index of a selected data source.....	238
1.2.16 GetTWAINTemplateCount Setting File / profile Total Number Acquisition	240
1.2.17 GetTWAINTemplateName Setting File / profile Name Acquisition	243
1.2.18 GetTWAINTemplateSelect Selected Setting File / profile Number Acquisition.....	244
1.2.19 OpenScanner Opening the Scanner	245
1.2.20 OpenScanner2 Open scanner (part 2)	247
1.2.21 ScannerAvailable Image Scanner Availability	249
1.2.22 SelectSource Data source Selection	251
1.2.23 SelectSourceName data source selection.....	253
1.2.24 SetCapability Capability Configuration	255
1.2.25 SetSlpcTemplateSelect Template Number Specification.....	256
1.2.26 SetTWAINTemplateSelect Configuring Setting File / profile Numbers	257
1.2.27 SetupDataSourceProperties Settable UI Display	258
1.2.28 StartScan Starting an Image Scanning	261
1.3 Events.....	265
1.3.1 List of Events	265

1.3.2 Notes on a Process Written in an Event Handler	266
1.3.3 Examples and Notation Conventions in This Chapter	266
1.3.4 AutoProfileSelection Notification of the identified forms	267
1.3.5 DetectBarcode Barcode detection notification	268
1.3.6 DetectBarcodeDetail Barcode detail detection notification	269
1.3.7 DetectJobSeparator Special Document / Patch Code Document Detection Notification	271
1.3.8 DetectPatchCode Patch code detection notification	272
1.3.9 MultiStreamPropertySetting Setting Properties for Each Image	273
1.3.10 NegotiateCapabilities Capability Configuration Notification	276
1.3.11 PagePartition Page break notification	277
1.3.12 ScanToDib DIB Handle Consignment	278
1.3.13 ScanToDibEx DIB Handle Consignment	279
1.3.14 ScanToFile File Output	280
1.3.15 ScanToRaw Memory Output	281
1.3.16 ScanToRawEx Memory Output	282
1.4 Property Pages	283
2. Samples	286
2.1 Basic Operations	286
2.2 Item Names	287
2.3 SoftIPC Template	288
2.4 TWAIN Template	288
2.5 Source List	289
2.6 Output Result	289
2.7 Visual Basic / Visual C# Sample Screen	290
2.8 Visual C++ Sample Screen	300
2.9 Java Sample Program	307
3. Appendix	308
3.1 Error code and how to fix error	308
3.2 Relationships Between Properties	314
3.3 Property Priority Order	331
3.4 Valid Specifications When Using the Image Processing Software Option	331
3.5 How to Change the Property Default Values	332
3.6 Bitmap Class Conversion Libraries for Visual Basic / Visual C#	336
3.6.1 Preparation for using DLL	336
3.6.2 Constructors	338
3.6.3 Properties	338
3.6.3.1 ErrorCode error information acquisition	338
3.6.4 Methods	339
3.6.4.1 GetBitmapFromDIB Converting the DIB handle into the Bitmap class	339
3.6.4.2 GetBitmapFromRAW Converting the image data handle into the Bitmap class	340
3.7 Explanation of Terms Used	341

1. Reference

This chapter describes properties, methods, and events for when Visual Basic / Visual C++ / Visual C# are used.

When using Java, select the following menu, and refer to the API document in HTML format. (Use Microsoft Internet Explorer 6.0 or later.)

[Start menu]→ [Programs] →[Fujitsu Scanner Control SDK V2.3]→[Javadoc]

1.1 Property

1.1.1 Property list

The following table gives an overview of the supported Fujitsu Scanner Control SDK properties:

PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver : PSIP

FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver : TWAIN

Property name	Description	PSIP	TWAIN
Group representing equipment properties			
ImageScanner	Gets the name of the image scanner.	○	○
IsExistsFB	Gets the device information regarding whether the flatbed (FB) is supported.	○	○
Driver properties (or feed method)			
AutomaticRotateMode	Sets a mode for detecting the orientation of an image when an image is automatically rotated.	○	N/A
AutomaticSenseMedium	Sets automatic switching for the ADF/FB feeding method.	○	N/A
AutoProfile	Sets whether to apply a profile automatically.	○	N/A
AutoProfileSensitivity	Specifies the sensitivity level for identifying a form when a profile is applied automatically.	○	N/A
CarrierSheetClippingMode	Sets the mode for clipping the Carrier Sheet.	○	N/A
CloseSourceUI	Sets whether or not to close the user interface (UI) of the source after scanning.	○	○
ErrorCode	Gets error information when methods end abnormally.	○	○
Indicator	Set whether to show the progress indicator while scanning.	○	○
LongPage	Sets the scanning of paper with a length greater than the maximum specifiable length (long page).	○	○
PageCount	Gets the scan page count.	○	○
PageNumber	Gets the number of a page that is currently being scanned.	○	○
PaperSupply	Sets the document feed method (flatbed, ADF, etc.).	○	○
ScanContinue	Sets continuous scanning.	○	N/A
ScanContinueMode	Sets the continuous scanning method.	○	N/A
ScanCount	Specifies the document scan page count.	○	○
ScanMode	Sets the scan mode.	○	N/A
ShowSourceUI	Sets whether or not to display the user interface (UI) of the source.	○	○
SilentMode	Sets whether or not to signal (display) error messages.	○	○
SourceCurrentScan	Sets whether or not to scan with the current settings of the source.	○	○
TwainDS	Sets the TWAIN data source used for scanning.	○	○
TwainDSAnyPort	Sets whether or not to lock the TWAIN data source name that is to be used.	○	N/A

Property name	Description	PSIP	TWAIN
Image format properties/destination			
CompressionType	Sets the data compression type.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
FileCounter	Sets the serial numbers of files.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
FileCounter1 FileCounter2 FileCounter3	Sets an initial value for each serial number that will be added to a file name when a file created from each output image is saved.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
FileName	Sets the file name for storing the image. (Extension not included)	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
FileName1 FileName2 FileName3	Sets the file names used for saving files for each output image (excluding extensions).	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
FileType	Sets the image data format of a file to output.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
JpegQuality	Specifies the JPEG data compression level.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Overwrite	Specifies whether or not to overwrite files.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
ScanTo	Sets how to output scan data (file, DIB handle, etc.).	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Image properties			
AdjustRGB	Sets whether to adjust the brightness of each color (Red, Green, Blue) separately.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
AdjustRGBB	Sets the brightness of the color blue when the brightness of each color (RGB) is adjusted separately.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
AdjustRGBG	Sets the brightness of the color green when the brightness of each color (RGB) is adjusted separately.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
AdjustRGBR	Sets the brightness of the color red when the brightness of each color (RGB) is adjusted separately.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
ADTCThreshold	Sets the automatic (advanced) binary threshold.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
AutoBright	Sets the automatic adjustment of the brightness-related image quality.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
AutomaticColorBackground	Detects color automatically ignoring background color.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
AutomaticColorSensitivity	Sets the sensitivity for auto color detection.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Background	Sets the background tracking.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
BackgroundSmoothing	Smoothens the image backgrounds, and prevents unevenness of color and density.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BackgroundSmoothness	Sets the smoothness level of the background color.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BackgroundThreshold	Sets the background threshold.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Brightness	Specifies the brightness.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
CharacterExtraction	Sets whether to extract characters or not.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
CharacterExtractionMethod	Sets the type of character extractions.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
CharacterThickness	Sets the thickness of the Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary character.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
ColorReproduction	Sets the color reproduction.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
ColorReproductionBrightness	Specifies the brightness when a color hue is prioritized.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
ColorReproductionContrast	Specifies the color contrast when a color hue is prioritized.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
ColorReproductionCustomGamma	Specifies the gamma value when a color hue is prioritized.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
ColorReproductionHighlight	Specifies a highlight when a color hue is prioritized.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
ColorReproductionShadow	Specifies a shadow when a color hue is prioritized.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A

Property name	Description	PSIP	TWAIN
Image properties			
Contrast	Sets the contrast.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
CustomGamma	Specifies a customized gamma value. Specifies the "custom value" when customization is set for the gamma pattern.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
CustomPaperLength	Sets the length of a custom-sized document.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
CustomPaperWidth	Sets the width of a custom-sized document.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
CustomResolution	Specifies the scan resolution. (Custom)	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
DTCsensitivity	Sets the Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary sensitivity.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
EdgeFiller	Sets the edge filler.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
EdgeFillerBottom	Sets the edge filler area at the bottom edge of the paper size.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
EdgeFillerLeft	Sets the edge filler area at the left edge of the paper size.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
EdgeFillerRight	Sets the edge filler area at the right edge of the paper size.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
EdgeFillerTop	Sets the edge filler area at the top edge of the paper size.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
EdgeRepair	Sets the edge filler repair.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
FadingCompensation	Sets the compensation of the fading section of the image during Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary scanning.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Filter	Sets the dropout color.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
FilterSaturationSensitivity	Sets the chromatic dropout color sensitivity.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Gamma	Sets the gamma pattern type (soft/sharp/download/custom).	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
GammaFile	Specifies a customized gamma pattern file.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Halftone	Specifies the halftone pattern.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
HalftoneFile	Specifies the halftone pattern file.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Highlight	Set highlights.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
MultiStreamDefaultValueMode	For properties that can be specified for each output image, this function enables the properties with a default value to be kept for each image.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
MultiStreamFileNameMode	Sets a file name and file counter for a file created from each output image.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
MultiStreamMode	Outputs multiple images for each page that is scanned.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
NoiseRejection	Sets the sensitivity for Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary noise removal.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Orientation	Sets the document orientation (portrait/landscape).	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Outline	Sets the correction of the image outline.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
PaperSize	Specifies the document size.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
PatternRemoval	Sets the removal of the Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary pattern.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
PixelType	Sets the pixel type (binary, gray, or color).	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
RegionLeft	Specifies the left end of the scan area.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
RegionLength	Specifies the length of the scan area.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
RegionTop	Specifies the top of the scan area.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
RegionWidth	Specifies the width of the scan area.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Resolution	Specifies the scan resolution. (Fixed style)	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Reverse	Sets the black and white reversal / color reversal.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
SDTCSensitivity	Sets the automatic (simple) binary dispersion value.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A

Property name	Description	PSIP	TWAIN
SEE	Sets the selective enhancement.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Image properties			
Shadow	Sets shadow.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Sharpness	Sets the sharpness.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
SimpleSlicePatternRemoval	Sets the removal of the simple slice binary pattern.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Smoothing	Sets the OCR smoothing/background removal (function to smooth jagged lines of images and remove irregularities of the background).	N/A	<input type="radio"/>
sRGB	Sets the sRGB output.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Threshold	Sets the threshold.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
VerticalLineReduction	Sets whether the vertical lines are reduced.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Properties relating to behavior			
AIQCNotice	Sets whether the image recognition check function is used.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
AIQCResult	Gets the image recognition check function results.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
AutoBorderDetection	Sets the auto document size detection (detects the document size and outputs the scan image with the same size).	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
BackgroundColor	Sets the background color.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
BarcodeDetection	Sets barcode detection.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BarcodeDirection	Sets the direction of the barcode that is detected.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BarcodeMaxSearchPriorities	Sets the maximum number of barcodes that are detected.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BarcodeNotDetectionNotice	Sets whether to send a barcode detection notification even if a barcode is not detected.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BarcodeRegionLeft	Sets the left edge of the barcode detection area.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BarcodeRegionLength	Sets the length of the barcode detection area.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BarcodeRegionTop	Sets the top edge of the barcode detection area.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BarcodeRegionWidth	Sets the width of the barcode detection area.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BarcodeType	Sets the type of barcode that is detected.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Binding	Sets the binding direction for duplex scanning.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
BlankPageIgnoreAreaSize	Sets the sides around a page to be undetected during blank page detection.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BlankPageNotice	Sets whether a blank page is output or not.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BlankPageResult	Requires blank page detection results.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BlankPageSkip	Sets the sensitivity to scan by skipping blank pages during continuous ADF scanning.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BlankPageSkipMode	Sets a criteria for detecting blank pages.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
BlankPageSkipTabPage	Sets whether or not index-tabbed pages are checked during blank page detection.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
CropMarginSize	Specifies the sizes of cropping margins.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
CropPriority	Sets the priority during automatic paper size detection.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Deskew	Sets the skew correction.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
DeskewBackground	Sets whether or not to fill in the areas around the scanned image that are produced as a result of skew correction with the contents deskew function.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
DeskewMode	Sets the driver's deskew setting in [Configuration].	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
DigitalEndorser	Sets whether the digital endorser is used.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
DigitalEndorserCountDirection	Sets the step direction of the digital endorser counter.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
DigitalEndorserCounter	Sets the default value of the digital endorser counter.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A

Property name	Description	PSIP	TWAIN
DigitalEndorserCountStep	Sets the step value of the digital endorser counter.	○	N/A
Properties relating to behavior			
DigitalEndorserDirection	Sets the digital endorser output direction.	○	N/A
DigitalEndorserString	Sets the digital endorser character string.	○	N/A
DigitalEndorserXOffset	Sets the digital endorser output start position (X offset).	○	N/A
DigitalEndorserYOffset	Sets the digital endorser output start position (Y offset).	○	N/A
DivideLongPage	Sets whether or not to divide long pages.	○	N/A
Endorser	Sets whether or not to use the endorser/imprinter.	○	○
EndorserCountDirection	Specifies the step direction (increase/decrease) of the endorser/imprinter counter.	○	○
EndorserCounter	Sets the default of the endorser/imprinter counter.	○	○
EndorserCountStep	Sets the step count of the endorser/imprinter counter.	○	○
Endorser Dialog	Sets whether or not to display the endorser/imprinter print settings window when scanning starts.	○	N/A
EndorserDirection	Sets the print direction of the endorser/imprinter.	○	○
EndorserFont	Sets the print font of the endorser/imprinter.	○	○
EndorserOffset	Sets the print start position of the endorser/imprinter.	○	○
EndorserString	Sets the string to print with the endorser/imprinter.	○	○
FrontBackDetection	Sets the ID card automatic detection setting.	○	N/A
FrontBackMergingEnabled	Sets whether or not to merge the front and back side images.	○	N/A
FrontBackMergingLocation	Sets the way of merging the front and back side images.	○	N/A
FrontBackMergingRotation	Sets the angle to rotate the back side when merging the front and back side images.	○	N/A
FrontBackMergingTarget	Sets a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged.	○	N/A
FrontBackMergingTargetMode	Sets the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged.	○	N/A
FrontBackMergingTargetSize	Sets the length for the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged.	○	N/A
HwCompression	Sets the transfer mode in the hardware.	○	N/A
JobControl	Specifies the job when detecting a special document (document in a particular shape).	○	○
JobControlMode	Sets the type of job control document.	○	N/A
LengthDetection	Sets paper end detection, background color, and overscan simultaneously.	○	N/A
MultiFeed	Sets the multifeed detection function ("MultiFeed" refers to the phenomenon, when two or more sheets of paper are fed at one time).	○	○
MultiFeedModeChangeSize	Specifies the paper length to disable multifeed detection.	○	N/A
MultiFeedNotice	Sets whether or not to use the multifeed notification function.	○	○
MultiFeedResult	Gets the result of the multifeed notification function.	○	○
OverScan	Set overscan.	○	○
PaperProtection	Detects document feeding errors.	○	N/A
PatchCodeDetection	Sets patch code detection.	○	N/A

Property name	Description	PSIP	TWAIN
PatchCodeDirection	Sets the direction of the patch code that is detected.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Properties relating to behavior			
PatchCodeType	Sets the type of patch code that is detected.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
PunchHoleRemoval	Sets removal of punch holes.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
PunchHoleRemovalMode	Sets which type of punch holes to be removed.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
Rotation	Specifies the rotation angle for a scanned image.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
SelectOutputSize	Select the method for specifying the output size used for automatic cropping.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
SkipBlackPage	Sets the function to scan by skipping blank pages (black pages) for continuous ADF scanning.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
SkipWhitePage	Sets the function to scan by skipping blank pages (white pages) for continuous ADF scanning.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
SynchronizationDigitalEndorser	Sets the endorser/imprinter and digital endorser synchronization function.	<input type="radio"/>	N/A
UndefinedScanning	Sets the undefined scanning.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Unit	Set units (inch/centimeter/pixel).	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
Others			
Report	Sets how to output the scan result report.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>
ReportFile	Specifies the name of the file to which the scan result is output.	<input type="radio"/>	<input type="radio"/>

1.1.2 Example of use and conventions in this chapter

Feature

Describes the overview of the property

Coding Style

Shows the description method and style used for the property's coding.

Describes codes in accordance with the conventions of Visual Basic.

Example) [form.] scancontrolname.ScanTo [= Integer]

The content given between square brackets ([]) can be omitted.

Value

Gives the list and description of values that can be set or referenced.

Default

Describes the value for Control (OCX), which is the default when loaded.

Explanation

Describes the usage and function of the property. In addition, notes and restraints regarding correlated properties are also described if necessary.

Target method

Shows the list of methods that, when processed, change the property's state.

Related Properties

Shows all properties affecting each other.

Value Setting

Describes the state in which the value can be set. At the design stage, the building state (environment) of the application, which uses Control (OCX) or Java class in the development environment (Visual Basic, Visual C++, Visual C#, Java, etc.), and at the time of implementation, the state of the running application, which actually uses Control (OCX) or Java class.

Even if the value is set, its validity is unknown in reality. (Note that if the value goes beyond the setting range, its validity is known.) In fact, the validity of the value cannot be judged until a certain method is implemented.

There are two cases of the setting being disabled: Firstly, after the value is changed, an error may return when a certain method is implemented. Secondly, even if the value is changed, the value itself may be disregarded.

Value Reference

Describes the state in which the value can be referenced.

At the time of program implementation: shows the value supposed to be enabled in the target method that will be implemented, or shows the implementation result of one previous method.

Error Recovery

Describes the handling in the event of invalid setting or processing.

Compatibility and Restraints

Describes differences in functionality between versions, or restraints on functionality, should such be the case.

1.1.3 AdjustRGB Adjusting the brightness of each color (RGB) separately

Feature

Sets whether to adjust the brightness of each color (Red, Green, Blue) separately.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**AdjustRGB** [= Boolean]

Value

True	Adjusts the brightness of each color (RGB) separately
False	Does not adjust the brightness of each color (RGB) separately

Default

False	Does not adjust the brightness of each color (RGB) separately
-------	---

Explanation

Sets whether to adjust the brightness of each color (RGB) separately.

This property is enabled only when "2 - RGB" is specified for the PixelType property.

The AdjustRGBR, AdjustRGBG, and AdjustRGBB property settings are applied only when "True" is set for this property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AdjustRGBB](#)

[AdjustRGBG](#)

[AdjustRGBR](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

[ScanMode](#)

[sRGB](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.4 AdjustRGBB Brightness of the Color Blue

Feature

Sets the brightness of the color blue when the brightness of each color (RGB) is adjusted separately.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**AdjustRGBB** [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from 1 to 255

Default

128

Explanation

The brightness of each color (RGB) can be adjusted separately.

This property sets the brightness of the color blue.

This property is enabled only when "True" is set for the AdjustRGB property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AdjustRGB](#)

[AdjustRGBG](#)

[AdjustRGBR](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 255).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.5 AdjustRGBG Brightness of the Color Green

Feature

Sets the brightness of the color green when the brightness of each color (RGB) is adjusted separately.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**AdjustRGBG** [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from 1 to 255

Default

128

Explanation

The brightness of each color (RGB) can be adjusted separately.

This property sets the brightness of the color green.

This property is enabled only when "True" is set for the AdjustRGB property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AdjustRGB](#)

[AdjustRGBB](#)

[AdjustRGBR](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 255).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.6 AdjustRGBR Brightness of the Color Red

Feature

Sets the brightness of the color red when the brightness of each color (RGB) is adjusted separately.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**AdjustRGBR** [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from 1 to 255

Default

128

Explanation

The brightness of each color (RGB) can be adjusted separately.

This property sets the brightness of the color red.

This property is enabled only when "True" is set for the AdjustRGB property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AdjustRGB](#)

[AdjustRGBB](#)

[AdjustRGBG](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 255).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.7 ADTCThreshold Automatic (advanced) binary threshold

Feature

Sets the automatic (advanced) binary threshold.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ADTCThreshold** [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from 1 to 255

Default

83

Explanation

Sets the automatic (advanced) binary threshold value.

This property is enabled only when the Threshold property is set to "-1".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 255).

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.8 AIQCNotice Automatic Image Quality Checker setting

Feature

Sets whether Automatic Image Quality Checker is used.

Coding Style

[form.]scancontrolName.AIQCNotice [=Boolean]

Value

True Automatic Image Quality Checker is used.
False Automatic Image Quality Checker is not used.

Default

False Automatic Image Quality Checker is not used.

Explanation

Sets whether Automatic Image Quality Checker is used during scanning.

When "True" is set for this property, set the AutoBorderDetection property to "TRUE" or the BackgroundColor property to "1 - ON".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AIQCResult](#)

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[BackgroundColor](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.9 AIQCResult Acquire Automatic Image Quality Checker results

Feature

Gets the Automatic Image Quality Checker results.

Coding Style

[form.]scancontrolname.AIQCResult [=Boolean]

Value

N/A. Property for value reference purposes only.

Default

False An error image was not detected.

Explanation

This enables a check of whether there is an error in the image of the current page when notification is sent for a ScanToFile, ScanToDibEx, or ScanToRawEx event.

True An error image was detected.

False An error image was not detected.

This property is enabled when [True] is set for the AIQCNotice property.

Even if a scanned image contains an error, when the EdgeRepair property has been set to "True" and the scanned image is repaired, False is returned.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AIQCNotice](#)

[ScanTo](#)

Related Events

[ScanToFile](#)

[ScanToDibEx](#)

[ScanToRawEx](#)

Value Setting

Not allowed.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.10 AutoBorderDetection automatic border detection

Feature

Sets the automatic document size detection function.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**AutoBorderDetection** [= Boolean]

Value

True Detects the document size.
False Does not detect the document size.

Default

False Does not detect the document size.

Explanation

Detects the document size at the time of ADF scanning and outputs the scan image with the same size.

If the document is scanned askew, detects and automatically corrects the skew.

In flatbed scanners, this is enabled in scanners that include the black document pad option.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[BackgroundColor](#)

[Deskew](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[LengthDetection](#)

[OverScan](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[UndefinedScanning](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

And if this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, sets it to "False" when scanning to carry out a scan. (* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

The property name "AutoBorderDetection" has been changed to "AutoBorderDetection" since V2.0L10. Operated correctly even if the old name "AutoBorderDetection" is used, but this is provided as a compatible for recompiling the source program created by a version of SDK older than V2.0L10 as is using an SDK version V2.0L10 or later. Note that compiling may become impossible in the future, should a major update of the version be conducted. Use the new property name "AutoBorderDetection" rather than "AutoBorderDetection" in order to newly create applications or modify existing programs.

1.1.11 AutoBright Automatic adjustment of brightness-related image quality

Feature

Sets the automatic adjustment of the brightness-related image quality.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**AutoBright** [= Boolean]

Value

True Automatic adjustment is performed.
False Automatic adjustment is not performed.

Default

False Automatic adjustment is not performed.

Explanation

Image brightness-related (brightness, contrast, shadow, highlight, gamma) image quality is adjusted automatically during scanning.

If "0 - Black & White" is set for the PixelType property, automatic adjustment is performed for the brightness, contrast, and gamma only.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.12 AutomaticColorBackground

.... setting auto color detection which ignores background color

Feature

Sets auto color detection which ignores background color.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **AutomaticColorBackground** [= Short]

Value

0 - Include Background Color (document which consists of only black and white)
1 - Ignore Background Color (document which consists of two colors)

Default

0 - Include Background Color (document which consists of only black and white)

Explanation

This is a function that detects color ignoring background color when auto color detection is enabled.

This property is enabled only when "3 - Automatic" is specified for the PixelType property.

If "0 - Include Background Color" is specified for this property, a document which consists of only black and white is detected as a binary (black and white) document.

If "1 - Ignore Background Color" is specified for this property, a document which consists of two colors is detected as a binary (black and white) document. However, a document with the background in an achromatic color (black, gray, or white) and with the contents in a chromatic color (color other than an achromatic color) is detected as an RGB color document.

For details, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.13 AutomaticColorSensitivity Sensitivity for auto color detection

Feature

Sets the sensitivity for auto color detection.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **AutomaticColorSensitivity** [= Short]

Value

The range is from -7 (likely to be black and white (grey)) to 7 (likely to be in color).

Default

0

Explanation

This function sets the sensitivity for auto color detection.

This property is enabled only when "3 - Automatic" is specified for the PixelType property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.14 AutomaticRotateMode Mode for detecting the orientation of an image

Feature

Sets a mode for detecting the orientation of an image when an image is automatically rotated.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**AutomaticRotateMode** [= Short]

Value

0 - Standard	Standard
1 - Custom	Rotation based on the reference area

Default

0 - Standard	Standard
--------------	----------

Explanation

Sets a mode for detecting the orientation of an image when an image is automatically rotated. When "1-Custom" is selected for this property, the scanned image and the registered reference area are compared and if the orientation is different from each other, the scanned image is rotated accordingly.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[CustomPaperLength](#)

[LongPage](#)

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[Rotation](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Some devices do not support "1 - Custom". In this case, "0 - Standard" is set and a scanning process is carried out.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.15 AutomaticSenseMedium ADF / FB automatic switching

Feature

Sets automatic switching for the ADF/FB feeding method.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**AutomaticSenseMedium** [= Boolean]

Value

True Automatic switching is performed.

False Automatic switching is not performed.

Default

False Automatic switching is not performed.

Explanation

If a document is loaded in the ADF, scanning is performed from the ADF. If no document is loaded in the ADF, scanning is performed from the flatbed.

This property is enabled only when "1 - ADF", "2 - ADF(Duplex)", or "3 - ADF(Back Side)" is set for the PaperSupply property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

If no document is loaded in the ADF, it takes some time for scanning to start when scanning from the flatbed.

1.1.16 AutoProfile Applying a profile automatically

Feature

Sets whether to apply a profile automatically.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **AutoProfile** [= Short]

Value

0 - Disabled	Does not apply a profile automatically.
1 - Enabled	Applies a profile automatically.

Default

0 - Disabled	Does not apply a profile automatically.
--------------	---

Explanation

Sets whether to identify a scanned form and apply a profile associated with the form automatically.

In the case that a profile is applied automatically, some functions are enabled due to the profile that was applied. In addition, the SDK property settings related to these functions are disabled in the above case.

For the functions that are enabled due to the profile that was applied, refer to the Help of the driver.

When "1 - Enabled" is set for this property

- "True" is set for the AutoBorderDetection property.
- If "22 - 8.5 x 34inch" - "27 - 8.5 x 220inch", "31 - 12 x 34inch" - "32 - 12 x 125inch", or "34 - 12 x 106.3inch" - "37 - 12 x 220inch" has been set for the PaperSize property, the default paper size for the scanner is set for the PaperSize property.
- If "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" - "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)" has been set for the PaperSupply property, the operation is not guaranteed.
- If a value other than "0 - OFF" has been set for the Report property, the scanner is not guaranteed to work.
- "4 - Automatic" is set for the Rotation property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to ["3.2 Relationships Between Properties"](#).

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfileSensitivity](#)

[MultiStreamMode](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.17 AutoProfileSensitivity Sensitivity level for identifying forms

Feature

Specifies the sensitivity level for identifying a form when a profile is applied automatically.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **AutoProfileSensitivity** [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from 1 to 5. The higher the value is, the stricter the matching criteria becomes for identifying forms.

Default

3

Explanation

In the process for applying a profile automatically, the scanned image is compared with images of forms that are registered. If the scanned image exceeds the matching criteria, the associated profile is applied.

Increasing the value of this property makes the matching criteria stricter (which means that the profile is applied only to the scanned images that go over the strict criteria).

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 5).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.18 AutoSeparation automatic image area separation

Feature

Sets the automatic image area separation.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**AutoSeparation** [= Short]

Value

0 - OFF	Does not execute the automatic image area separation.
1 - ON	Executes the automatic image area separation.

Default

0 - OFF	Does not execute the automatic image area separation.
---------	---

Explanation

If the automatic image area separation is enabled (1-ON), line (character) and image (photo) areas are distinguished: the former being scanned in "binary (black and white)" mode, while the latter being scanned in "subtle black and white (halftone)" mode. This is especially suitable for documents consisting of pages filled with text and pages containing photographs. This property is enabled only when "0 - Black & White" is set for the PixelType property.

Because this property is not supported in devices without an image processing board, it will be set to OFF (does not execute the auto image area separation) when executing a scan.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Halftone](#)

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If "1 - Grayscale" or "2 - RGB" has been set for the PixelType property, a scan will be executed without regard to this property. If the Halftone property is set to "0 - None," sets it to the "1 - Dither Pattern 0" (for dark photo image).

In devices not supporting this property, if "1 - ON" is set for this property, the halftone effect may appear on the image scanned.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.19 Background background tracking

Feature

Sets the background tracking.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Background** [= Integer]

Value

0 - OFF	No (disabled)
1 - ON	Yes (enabled)
2 - AUTO	Automatic

Default

0 - OFF	N/A
---------	-----

Explanation

Sets the background tracking (No/Yes/Auto).

* Background tracking refers to the function that automatically tracks and adjusts the contrast when scanning a document with background color other than white.

This function is effective for scanning documents whose ground color is not pure white like newspapers, for example.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

And if this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.20 BackgroundColor setting the background color (black background)

Feature

Sets the background color (black background)

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **BackgroundColor** [= Short]

Value

0 - OFF No (Uses the scanner settings)
1 - ON Yes (Black) * Enabled only for scanners that support the black background

Default

0 - OFF No (Uses the scanner settings)

Explanation

Sets the background color at the time of ADF scanning.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[AutoProfile](#)

[LengthDetection](#)

[OverScan](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[PunchHoleRemoval](#)

[UndefinedScanning](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

And if this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

The values 0-OFF and 1-ON are described as 0-White and 1-Black since V2.0L20. Note that both are the same behavior.

1.1.21 BackgroundSmoothing ... Background color smoothing(Color cleanup)

Feature

Smoothens the image backgrounds, and prevents unevenness of color and density.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **BackgroundSmoothing** [= Short]

Value

0 - None	No smoothing is performed.
1 - Automatic	Smoothing is performed automatically.
2 - White	Smoothing is performed in white.

Default

0 - None	No smoothing is performed.
----------	----------------------------

Explanation

This is a function that sets the way of smoothing image backgrounds.

1 - Automatic	Prevents unevenness of color and density.
2 - White	Changes the area of the color that is used the most in the background to white in order to emphasize letters and lines.

This property is enabled only when "1 - Grayscale" or "2 - RGB" is specified for the PixelType property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.22 BackgroundSmoothness

.... Background color smoothness(Color cleanup smoothness)

Feature

Sets the smoothness level of the background color.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **BackgroundSmoothness** [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from 0 (low) to 10 (high)

Default

5

Explanation

This is a function that adjusts the smoothness level of image backgrounds.

The color range for smoothing is bigger when the smoothness is set higher. The color range for smoothing is smaller when the smoothness is set lower.

This property is enabled only when "1 - Automatic" or "2 - White" is specified for the BackgroundSmoothing property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BackgroundSmoothing](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.23 BackgroundThreshold Background color threshold

Feature

Sets the background threshold.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **BackgroundThreshold** [= Short]

Value

The range is from 0 (background is likely to be darker) to 100 (background is not likely to be darker).

Default

50

Explanation

This function sets the background threshold.

This property is enabled only when "0 - Black & White" is specified for the PixelType property and "-2" is specified for the Threshold property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to ["3.2 Relationships Between Properties"](#).

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.24 BarcodeDetection Barcode detection

Feature

Sets barcode detection.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BarcodeDetection** [= Boolean]

Value

True Barcode detection is performed.

False Barcode detection is not performed.

Default

False Barcode detection is not performed.

Explanation

Sets barcode detection.

If "True" is set for the BarcodeDetection property, the [DetectBarcode](#), [DetectBarcodeDetail](#) event is issued when a barcode is detected.

Refer to the [DetectBarcode](#), [DetectBarcodeDetail](#) event.

For detection conditions on barcodes, refer to the driver help.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DivideLongPage](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on the device type, this property is set to "False" and then a scan will be carried out.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.25 BarcodeDirection Barcode detection direction setting

Feature

Sets the direction of the barcode that is detected.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BarcodeDirection** [= Short]

Value

0 - Horizontal	Horizontal direction
1 - Vertical	Vertical direction
2 - Horizontal & Vertical	Horizontal and vertical directions

Default

2 - Horizontal & Vertical	Horizontal and vertical directions
---------------------------	------------------------------------

Explanation

Sets the direction of the barcode that is detected.

This property is enabled only when the BarcodeDetection property is set to "True".

For detection conditions on barcodes, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BarcodeDetection](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.26 BarcodeMaxSearchPriorities Barcode maximum detection count setting

Feature

Sets the maximum number of barcodes that are detected.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BarcodeMaxSearchPriorities** [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from 1 to 20

Default

1

Explanation

Sets the maximum number of barcodes that are detected on one page.

This property is enabled only when the BarcodeDetection property is set to "True".

For detection conditions on barcodes, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BarcodeDetection](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.27 BarcodeNotDetectionNotice

.... Barcode detection notification when a barcode is not detected

Feature

Sets whether to send a barcode detection notification even if a barcode is not detected.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BarcodeNotDetectionNotice** [= Boolean]

Value

True Sends a barcode detection notification even if a barcode is not detected.
False Does not send a barcode detection notification if a barcode is not detected.

Default

False Does not send a barcode detection notification if a barcode is not detected.

Explanation

When "True" is set for this property, the barcode detection function works during a scan and the [DetectBarcode](#) and [DetectBarcodeDetail](#) events can be received even if a barcode is not detected.

For the content that you are notified about by the events, refer to the [DetectBarcode](#) and [DetectBarcodeDetail](#) events.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BarcodeDetection](#)

[BarcodeDirection](#)

[BarcodeMaxSearchPriorities](#)

[BarcodeRegionLeft](#)

[BarcodeRegionLength](#)

[BarcodeRegionTop](#)

[BarcodeRegionWidth](#)

[BarcodeType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If "False" is set for the BarcodeDetection property, a scan will be executed without regard to this property.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.28 BarcodeRegionLeft Barcode detection area left edge position

Feature

Sets the left edge position of the barcode detection area.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BarcodeRegionLeft** [= Single]

Value

Sets the left edge position of the barcode detection area.

Default

0

Explanation

Sets the left edge position of the barcode detection area.

This property is enabled only when the BarcodeDetection property is set to "True".

Set so that the barcode detection area that is set by the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionLength, BarcodeRegionTop, and BarcodeRegionWidth properties forms a rectangle.

If the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionLength, BarcodeRegionTop, and BarcodeRegionWidth properties are all set to "0", the barcode detection area becomes the entire scanning paper size.

For detection conditions on barcodes, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[CustomPaperWidth](#)

[CustomPaperLength](#)

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[BarcodeDetection](#)

[BarcodeRegionLength](#)

[BarcodeRegionTop](#)

[BarcodeRegionWidth](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

If a negative value is set, the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionTop, BarcodeRegionWidth, and BarcodeRegionLength properties are all set to "0" when scanning is performed, and the barcode detection area becomes the entire paper size.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.29 BarcodeRegionLength Barcode detection area length

Feature

Sets the length of the barcode detection area.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BarcodeRegionLength** [= Single]

Value

Sets the length of the barcode detection area.

Default

0

Explanation

Sets the length (vertical) of the barcode detection area.

This property is enabled only when the BarcodeDetection property is set to "True".

Set so that the barcode detection area that is set by the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionLength, BarcodeRegionTop, and BarcodeRegionWidth properties forms a rectangle.

If the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionLength, BarcodeRegionTop, and BarcodeRegionWidth properties are all set to "0", the barcode detection area becomes the entire scanning paper size.

For detection conditions on barcodes, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[CustomPaperWidth](#)

[CustomPaperLength](#)

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[BarcodeDetection](#)

[BarcodeRegionLeft](#)

[BarcodeRegionTop](#)

[BarcodeRegionWidth](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

If a negative value is set, the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionTop, BarcodeRegionWidth, and BarcodeRegionLength properties are all set to "0" when scanning is performed, and the barcode detection area becomes the entire paper size.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.30 BarcodeRegionTop Barcode detection area top edge position

Feature

Sets the top edge position of the barcode detection area.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BarcodeRegionTop** [= Single]

Value

Sets the top edge position of the barcode detection area.

Default

0

Explanation

Sets the top edge position of the barcode detection area.

This property is enabled only when the BarcodeDetection property is set to "True".

Set so that the barcode detection area that is set by the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionLength, BarcodeRegionTop, and BarcodeRegionWidth properties forms a rectangle.

If the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionLength, BarcodeRegionTop, and BarcodeRegionWidth properties are all set to "0", the barcode detection area becomes the entire scanning paper size.

For detection conditions on barcodes, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[CustomPaperWidth](#)

[CustomPaperLength](#)

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[BarcodeDetection](#)

[BarcodeRegionLeft](#)

[BarcodeRegionLength](#)

[BarcodeRegionWidth](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

If a negative value is set, the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionTop, BarcodeRegionWidth, and BarcodeRegionLength properties are all set to "0" when scanning is performed, and the barcode detection area becomes the entire paper size.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.31 BarcodeRegionWidth Barcode detection area width

Feature

Sets the width of the barcode detection area.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BarcodeRegionWidth** [= Single]

Value

Sets the width of the barcode detection area.

Default

0

Explanation

Sets the width of the barcode detection area.

This property is enabled only when the BarcodeDetection property is set to "True".

Set so that the barcode detection area that is set by the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionLength, BarcodeRegionTop, and BarcodeRegionWidth properties forms a rectangle.

If the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionLength, BarcodeRegionTop, and BarcodeRegionWidth properties are all set to "0", the barcode detection area becomes the entire scanning paper size.

For detection conditions on barcodes, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[CustomPaperWidth](#)

[CustomPaperLength](#)

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[BarcodeDetection](#)

[BarcodeRegionLeft](#)

[BarcodeRegionLength](#)

[BarcodeRegionTop](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

If a negative value is set, the BarcodeRegionLeft, BarcodeRegionTop, BarcodeRegionWidth, and BarcodeRegionLength properties are all set to "0" when scanning is performed, and the barcode detection area becomes the entire paper size.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.32 BarcodeType Barcode type setting

Feature

Sets the type of barcode that is detected.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BarcodeType** [= Integer]

Value

Sets the type of barcode that is detected.

- 1 - EAN 8
- 2 - EAN 13
- 4 - Code 3 of 9
- 8 - Code 128
- 16 - ITF
- 32 - UPC-A
- 64 - Codabar
- 128 - PDF417
- 256 - QR code
- 512 - Data Matrix
- 1024 - Aztec Code

Default

511 All types except "512 - Data Matrix" and "1024 - Aztec Code"

Explanation

Sets the type of barcode that is detected.

This property is enabled only when the BarcodeDetection property is set to "True".

If detection of multiple barcodes is set, set the total setting value.

Example:

To detect "1 - EAN8" and "2 - EAN13", set "3".

For detection conditions on barcodes, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BarcodeDetection](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

To specify the two-dimensional codes "128 - PDF417", "256 - QR code", "512 - Data Matrix", or "1024 - Aztec Code", install "2D Barcode for PaperStream". If a two-dimensional code is specified without installing "2D Barcode for PaperStream", the source current value is used

for BarcodeType.

1.1.33 Binding duplex binding direction

Feature

Sets the binding direction for duplex scanning.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Binding** [= Short]

Value

0 - Side	Right and left binding
1 - Height	Top and bottom binding

Default

0 - Side	Right and left binding
----------	------------------------

Explanation

If the right and left binding "0 - Side" is specified, both images scanned are output as is.

If the top and bottom binding "1 - Height" is specified, only the scanned image of the back side is output half-turned.

This property is enabled only when "2 - ADF(Duplex)" is set for the PaperSupply property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[Rotation](#)

[ScanTo](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.34 BlankPageIgnoreAreaSize Sides undetected during blank page detection

Feature

Sets the sides around a page to be undetected during blank page detection.

Coding Style

[form.]scancontrolname. BlankPageIgnoreAreaSize [=Short]

Value

Value in the range from 0 to 16

Default

16

Explanation

Sets the left, right, top, and bottom sides of the image to be undetected during blank page detection.

If a value larger than 4 mm is specified for an image with the side length less than 158 mm, the value is set to 4 mm.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BlankPageSkip](#)

[BlankPageSkipMode](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[SkipBlackPage](#)

[SkipWhitePage](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.35 BlankPageNotice Output blank page setting

Feature

Sets whether a blank page is output or not.

Coding Style

[form.]scancontrolname.BlankPageNotice [=Short]

Value

0 - OFF Not Output
1 - ON Output

Default

0 - OFF Not Output

Explanation

Sets whether blank pages are output or not when scanning.

When you specify [1 - ON] for this property, select any value other than [0] for the BlankPageSkip property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BlankPageResult](#)

[BlankPageSkip](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.36 BlankPageResult Get blank page detection results

Feature

Gets the blank page detection results.

Coding Style

[form.]scancontrolname.BlankPageResult [=Short]

Value

N/A. Property for value reference purposes only.

Default

0 No blank page was detected.

Explanation

This enables a check of whether the current page is a blank page or not when a notification is sent for a ScanToFile, ScanToDibEx, or ScanToRawEx event.

0 No blank page was detected.

1 Blank page was detected.

This property is enabled only when "1 -ON" is set for the BlankPageNotice property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BlankPageNotice](#)

[ScanTo](#)

Related Events

[ScanToFile](#)

[ScanToDibEx](#)

[ScanToRawEx](#)

Value Setting

Not possible.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.37 BlankPageSkip Blank page skip sensitivity

Feature

Sets the sensitivity to scan by skipping blank pages during continuous ADF scanning.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BlankPageSkip** [= Short]

Value

- 0 - Blank pages are not skipped.
- 1 - 11 - Higher values result in higher likelihood of skipping.

Default

- 0 - Blank pages are not skipped.

Explanation

Sets the sensitivity to scan by skipping blank pages during continuous ADF scanning. Values of the FileCounter property and PageCount property are not updated on pages skipped.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BlankPageSkipMode](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[SkipBlackPage](#)

[SkipWhitePage](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

This property is ignored when the device does not support this property.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.38 BlankPageSkipMode Blank page skip mode

Feature

Sets a criteria for detecting blank pages.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BlankPageSkipMode** [= Short]

Value

0 - Sensitivity	Sensitivity
1 - Black & White Dots Ratio	Black & white dots ratio

Default

0 - Sensitivity	Sensitivity
-----------------	-------------

Explanation

Sets a criteria for detecting blank pages.

When "0 - Sensitivity" is set, the sensitivity set for the BlankPageSkip property is used to detect blank pages.

When "1 - Black & White Dots Ratio" is set, the black and white dots ratios set for the SkipBlackPage property and the SkipWhitePage property are used to detect blank pages.

If a value other than black & white is set for the PixelType property, or if a value is set to "0" for the SkipBlackPage and SkipWhitePage properties, the sensitivity set for the BlankPageSkip property is used.

Values of the FileCounter property and PageCount property are not updated on pages skipped.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BlankPageSkip](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[SkipBlackPage](#)

[SkipWhitePage](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

This property is ignored when the device does not support this property.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.39 BlankPageSkipTabPage Blank page skip settings for index-tabbed pages

Feature

Sets whether or not index-tabbed pages are checked during blank page detection.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**BlankPageSkipTabPage** [= Short]

Value

0 - All Pages	Includes all pages
1 - Skip Tab Pages	Excludes index-tabbed pages

Default

0 - All Pages	Includes all pages
---------------	--------------------

Explanation

Sets whether or not index-tabbed pages are checked during blank page detection.

If "0 - All pages" is set, all pages are checked.

If "1 - Skip Tab Pages" is set, pages without index tabs are checked.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[BlankPageSkip](#)

[BlankPageSkipMode](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[SkipBlackPage](#)

[SkipWhitePage](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.40 Brightness brightness

Feature

Specifies the brightness.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Brightness** [= Short]

Value

Between 1 (bright) and 255 (dark).

Default

128

Explanation

Sets the brightness of images when scanning.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBright](#)

[AutoSeparation](#)

[Gamma](#)

[Halftone](#)

[PixelType](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[SEE](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 255).

And if this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.41 CarrierSheetClippingMode Carrier Sheet clipping mode

Feature

Sets the mode for clipping the Carrier Sheet.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CarrierSheetClippingMode** [= Short]

Value

0 - Content	Crops the document content
1 - Edge	Crops the whole document
2 - Driver Setting	Uses the driver settings

Default

2 - Driver Setting	Uses the driver settings
--------------------	--------------------------

Explanation

Sets the mode for clipping the Carrier Sheet.

This property is enabled when one of the values from "14 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping All)" to "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)" is set for the PaperSupply property.

To output an image in the same size as a document, set "30 – ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Auto)" or "48 – ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Auto)" for the PaperSupply property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.42 CharacterExtraction Extracting characters

Feature

Sets whether to extract characters or not.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CharacterExtraction** [= Boolean]

Value

True Extracts characters.

False Does not extract characters.

Default

False Does not extract characters.

Explanation

Processes images in order to improve OCR accuracy.

For details about character extraction, refer to the Help of the driver.

This property is enabled only when "0 - Black & White" is specified for the PixelType property and "-2" is specified for the Threshold property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

When "True" is set for this property, the setting for the Filter property is ignored.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[CharacterExtractionMethod](#)

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property is disabled due to the device type, set this property to "False" during scanning execution to perform the scan. (* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.43 CharacterExtractionMethod Setting the type of character extractions

Feature

Sets the type of character extractions.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **CharacterExtractionMethod** [= Integer]

Value

Sets the type of character extractions.

- 1 - ReversedTypeExtraction
 Outlined characters (Inverting the color of characters from white to black)
- 2 - HalftoneRemoval
 Shaded characters (Removing shading)
- 4 - StampRemoval
 Characters stamped with a seal (Removing vermilion seal)

Default

7 All types

Explanation

Sets the type of character extractions to process images in order to improve OCR accuracy.

This property is enabled only when the CharacterExtraction property is set to "True".

If you want to set multiple types of character extractions, specify the total number of values for these types.

Example:

To remove "1 - ReversedTypeExtraction " and "2 - HalftoneRemoval ", specify "3".

For details about the character extraction, refer to the Help of the driver.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[CharacterExtraction](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.44 CharacterThickness

.... Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary character thickness setting

Feature

Sets the thickness of the Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary character.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CharacterThickness** [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from 0 (narrow) to 10 (wide)

Default

5

Explanation

Sets the thickness of the Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary character.

This property is enabled only when "0 - Black & White" is specified for the PixelType property and "-2" is specified for the Threshold property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 0 and 10).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.45 CloseSourceUI exit setting for the user interface (UI) of the source

Feature

Sets whether or not to close the user interface (UI) of the source after scanning.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CloseSourceUI** [= Boolean]

Value

True Closes the user interface of the source after scanning.

False Does not close the user interface of the source after scanning.

Default

False Does not close the user interface of the source after scanning.

Explanation

If this property is set to "True," automatically closes the user interface of the source after scanning.

This property is enabled only when the ShowSourceUI property is set to "True."

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ShowSourceUI](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If "False" is set for the ShowSourceUI property, a scan will be executed without regard to this property.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.46 ColorReproduction Color reproduction

Feature

Sets the color reproduction.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ColorReproduction** [= Short]

Value

0 - Contrast	Prioritizes the contrast of a color
1 - Hue	Prioritizes the hue of a color

Default

0 - Contrast	Prioritizes the contrast of a color
--------------	-------------------------------------

Explanation

Select the way to correct the color tone when scanning documents in color.

This property is enabled only when "2 - RGB" is set for the PixelType property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ColorReproductionBrightness](#)

[ColorReproductionContrast](#)

[ColorReproductionCustomGamma](#)

[ColorReproductionHighlight](#)

[ColorReproductionShadow](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

[ScanMode](#)

[sRGB](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.47 ColorReproductionBrightness Brightness when a color hue is prioritized

Feature

Specifies the brightness when a color hue is prioritized.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ColorReproductionBrightness** [= Short]

Value

Between 1 (bright) and 255 (dark)

Default

128

Explanation

Sets the image brightness when a color hue is prioritized for a scan.

This property is enabled only when "1 - Hue" is set for the ColorReproduction property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ColorReproduction](#)

[ColorReproductionContrast](#)

[ColorReproductionCustomGamma](#)

[ColorReproductionHighlight](#)

[ColorReproductionShadow](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 255).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.48 ColorReproductionContrast Color contrast when a color hue is prioritized

Feature

Specifies the color contrast when a color hue is prioritized.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ColorReproductionContrast** [= Short]

Value

Between 1 (low) and 255 (high)

Default

128

Explanation

Sets the degree of difference between light and dark extremes for the scanned image when a color hue is prioritized for a scan.

Configurable between 1 and 255.

The greater the value is, the darker the dark area and the lighter the light area of an image will be scanned.

This property is enabled only when "1 - Hue" is set for the ColorReproduction property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ColorReproduction](#)

[ColorReproductionBrightness](#)

[ColorReproductionCustomGamma](#)

[ColorReproductionHighlight](#)

[ColorReproductionShadow](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 255).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.49 ColorReproductionCustomGamma

.... Gamma value when a color hue is prioritized

Feature

Specifies the gamma value when a color hue is prioritized.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ColorReproductionCustomGamma** [= Single]

Value

Between 0.1 and 10.0

Default

1.0

Explanation

Sets the gamma value when a color hue is prioritized for a scan.

For the the gamma value, refer to the CustomGamma property.

This property is enabled only when "1 - Hue" is set for the ColorReproduction property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ColorReproduction](#)

[ColorReproductionBrightness](#)

[ColorReproductionContrast](#)

[ColorReproductionHighlight](#)

[ColorReproductionShadow](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 0.1 and 10.0).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.50 ColorReproductionHighlight Highlight when a color hue is prioritized

Feature

Specifies a highlight when a color hue is prioritized.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ColorReproductionHighlight** [= Short]

Value

Between 1 and 255

Default

255

Explanation

Sets a highlight when a color hue is prioritized for a scan.

This property is enabled only when "1 - Hue" is set for the ColorReproduction property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ColorReproduction](#)

[ColorReproductionBrightness](#)

[ColorReproductionContrast](#)

[ColorReproductionCustomGamma](#)

[ColorReproductionShadow](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 255).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.51 ColorReproductionShadow Shadow when a color hue is prioritized

Feature

Specifies a shadow when a color hue is prioritized.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ColorReproductionShadow** [= Short]

Value

Between 0 and 254

Default

0

Explanation

Sets a shadow on an image when a color hue is prioritized for a scan.

This property is enabled only when "1 - Hue" is set for the ColorReproduction property.

It is not possible to set a value higher than that specified as the ColorReproductionHighlight property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ColorReproduction](#)

[ColorReproductionBrightness](#)

[ColorReproductionContrast](#)

[ColorReproductionCustomGamma](#)

[ColorReproductionHighlight](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 0 and 254) or the value set for the ColorReproductionHighlight property.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

The applicable value range for this property depends on the current ColorReproductionHighlight property value. Therefore, the ColorReproductionHighlight property must be set first.

1.1.52 CompressionType data compression type

Feature

Settings
Sets the data compression type,

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CompressionType** [= Short]

Value

0 - No Compress	No (not compressing)
1 - CCITT G3(1D)	MH compression
2 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 2	MR compression K Factor 2
3 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 4	MR compression K Factor 4
4 - CCITT G4	MMR compression
5 - JPEG	JPEG compression
6 - Old JPEG	Old JPEG compression (TIFF file only)

Default

4 - CCITT G4 MMR compression

Explanation

Explanation
Specifies the data compression type.

This property is enabled when the ScanTo property is set to "0 - File" and the FileType property is set to "1 - TIF," "2 - Multipage TIF," "4 - PDF" or "5 - Multipage PDF" or when the ScanTo property is set to "2 - Raw Image Handle." Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

When the FileType property is set to "0 - BMP", this property operates as if set to "0 - No Compress" regardless of the actual setting.

When the FileType property is set to "3 - JPEG", this property operates as if set to "5 - JPEG" regardless of the actual setting.

When the ScanTo property is set to "2 - Raw Image Handle", and this property is set to "6 - Old JPEG", this property operates as if set to "5 - JPEG".

For binary (black and white) compression with the PixelType property set to "0 - Black & White," the suitable values to set for this property include "1 - CCITT G3(1D) ," " 2 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 2," " 3 - CCITT G3(2D) Kfactor = 4" and "4 - CCITT G4." For color image compression with the PixelType property set to "2 - RGB," the suitable value to set for this property is "5 - JPEG."

However, for the compression to be carried out in such case (as the halftone is specified for the Halftone property - when a value from 1 to 4 is specified for this property) the expected compression rate cannot be guaranteed. Because the above compression shall be, in principle, specified for binary (black and white) images.

When the PixelType property is set to "1 - Grayscale" or "2 - RGB" and when it is specified that the compression is carried out by this property (its value set to "1 - CCITT G3(1D) ," " 2 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 2," " 3 - CCITT G3(2D) Kfactor = 4" or "4 - CCITT G4"), scanning is done in binary (black and white) mode.

When set to "2 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 2" or "3 - CCITT G3(2D) Kfactor = 4" in the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver, this property operates as it is set to "3 - CCITT G3(2D) Kfactor = 4".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

Target method

StartScan

Related Properties[FileType](#)[JpegQuality](#)[PaperSupply](#)[PixelType](#)[ScanTo](#)**Value Setting**

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

For invalid combinations specified, if the FileType property is set to either 4-PDF or 5-Multipage PDF, scanning will be done with the setting of 4-CCITT G4. Otherwise it will be done with the setting of 0-No Compress.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.53 Contrast contrast

Feature

Sets the contrast.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Contrast** [= Short]

Value

Between 1 (low) and 255 (high).

Default

128

Explanation

Sets the degree of difference between light and dark extremes for the scanned image. Configurable between 1 and 255.

The greater the value is, the darker the dark area and the lighter the light area of an image will be scanned.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBright](#)

[Gamma](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 255).

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.54 CropMarginSize Sizes of cropping margins

Feature

Specifies the sizes of cropping margins.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CropMarginSize** [= Single]

Value

Between -5 and 5

(Between -5 and -1: Cropping inside)

(Between 1 and 5: Cropping outside)

Default

0

Explanation

Specifies the sizes of cropping margins.

This property is enabled only when the AutoBorderDetection property is set to "TRUE".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[AutoProfile](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[SelectOutputSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

The value will not be updated if it is set outside the range (between -5 and 5).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)".)

Compatibility and Restraints

For future expansion, the coding type is set to [= Single]. Make sure that the decimal part is 0.

1.1.55 CropPriority Priority setting during automatic paper size detection

Feature

Sets the priority during automatic paper size detection.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CropPriority** [= Short]

Value

0 - Speed	Speed priority
1 - Accuracy	Accuracy priority

Default

0 - Speed	Speed priority
-----------	----------------

Explanation

Sets the priority during automatic paper size detection.

This property is enabled only when the AutoBorderDetection property is set to "TRUE".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[ScanMode](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.56 CustomGamma custom gamma

Feature

Specifies the gamma value.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CustomGamma** [= Single]

Value

Between 0.1 and 10.0.

Default

2.2

Explanation

Sets any gamma value (custom value).

This property is enabled only when the Gamma property is set to "4 - Custom."

<Gamma value>

Value for correcting the nonlinearity of an image, configurable between 0.1 and 10.0.

Linearity needs to be adjusted because while the sensor in the scanner gives linear output in relation to the density of the light reflected from a document, most output terminals (CRT, etc.) do not give linear output in relation to the input.

Generally speaking, it is lighter if the gamma value is greater than 1, and darker if the gamma value is smaller than 1.

(The figure below shows relationship between gamma value (γ) and input/output value.)

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Gamma](#)

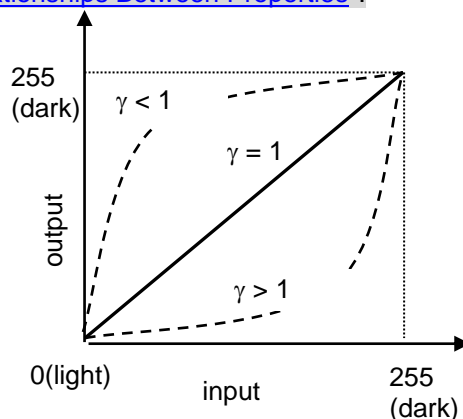
[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.



Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 0.1 and 10.0).

This property is disregarded if the Gamma property is set to any value other than "4 - Custom."

And if this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.57 CustomPaperLength custom document length

Feature

Sets the length of a custom-sized document.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CustomPaperLength** [= Single]

Value

Sets the length of a custom-sized document.

Default

1

Explanation

Sets the scanning length.

This property is enabled only when the document size is set to "99 - Custom" for the PaperSize property.

Sets 2 inches (51 mm) and performs a scan when a value smaller than 2 inches (51 mm) is specified while the PaperSupply property is specified with "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)."

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[LongPage](#)

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

This property is disregarded if the PaperSize property is set to any value other than "99 - Custom."

And when long page document is NOT scanned specified by LongPage property, if the value set is longer than the physical length of the device, the value will be set to the physical length of the device when scanning to carry out a scan.

When long page document is scanned specified by LongPage property, the document longer than the physical length of the device can be scanned. But if the length exceeds the maximum value of LongPage, the scanning is carried out with the maximum value of LongPage.

With the FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver is used, if the value set is smaller than 1 inch (26 mm), the value will be set to 1 inch (26 mm) during prescan.

With the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver is used, if the value set is smaller than 1 inch (25.4 mm), the value will be set to 1 inch (25.4 mm) during prescan.

Compatibility and Restraints

At long page documents scanning, if the value set is longer than the maximum value of LongPage, scanning is carried out with maximum value that is possible to scan. However, it will not be changed to the maximum value after the property is executed.

1.1.58 CustomPaperWidth custom document width

Feature

Sets the width of a custom-sized document.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CustomPaperWidth** [= Single]

Value

Sets the width of a custom-sized document.

Default

1

Explanation

Sets the scanning width.

This property is enabled only when the document size is set to "99 - Custom" for the PaperSize property.

Sets 2 inches (51 mm) and performs a scan when a value smaller than 2 inches (51 mm) is specified while the PaperSupply property is specified with "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)."

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

This property is disregarded if the PaperSize property is set to any value other than "99 - Custom."

And if the value set is longer than the physical width of the device, the value will be set to the physical width of the device when scanning to carry out a scan.

With the FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver is used, if the value set is smaller than 1 inch (26 mm), the value will be set to 1 inch (26 mm) during prescan.

With the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver is used, if the value set is smaller than 1 inch (25.4 mm), the value will be set to 1 inch (25.4 mm) during prescan.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.59 CustomResolution custom resolution

Feature

Specifies the scan resolution.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CustomResolution** [= Short]

Value

Between 50 and 600 [dpi].

Default

300

Explanation

Sets the scan resolution.

This property is enabled only when the Resolution property is set to "99 - Custom."

However, even if the resolution is supported by the device, scanning may not be possible due to the size of a document to scan, etc.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Resolution](#)

[PaperSize](#)

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 50 and 600).

And if the resolution not supported by the device is set, the default value will be set when scanning to carry out a scan.

* Available scan resolution varies with device.

Refer to the User's Guide for your device.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

The default has been changed to 300 instead of 400 since V2.0L10.

1.1.60 Deskew Skew correction

Feature

Sets the skew correction.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Deskew** [= Short]

Value

0 - Edge	Corrects skew of the document edges.
1 - Documents	Corrects skew in the document content.
2 - OFF	Does not correct skew.

Default

2 - OFF	Does not skew correction.
---------	---------------------------

Explanation

Sets the skew correction.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[AutoProfile](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[LengthDetection](#)

[OverScan](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[UndefinedScanning](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.61 DeskewBackground Background color used for skew correction

Feature

Sets whether or not to fill in the areas around the scanned image that are produced as a result of skew correction with the contents deskew function.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**DeskewBackground** [= Short]

Value

0 - None	No fill in.
1 - Background	Background color fill in.

Default

0 - Background Background color fill in.

Explanation

Sets whether to fill in or not to fill in the areas around the scanned image that are produced as a result of skew correction with the contents deskew function.

When "0 - None" is set for this property, the areas are black for a device that supports a black background, and the areas are white for a device that does not support a black background. When "0 - Flatbed" is set for the PaperSupply property, regardless of the device background specification, the areas are black.

This property is enabled only when the Deskew property is specified with a setting other than "2 - OFF".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Deskew](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.62 DeskewMode Deskew mode

Feature

Sets the driver's deskew setting in [Configuration].

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**DeskewMode** [= Short]

Value

0 - OFF

1 - ON

Default

1 - ON

Explanation

Sets the deskew setting for [Deskew Method] in the driver's [Configuration] window.

This property is enabled only when the Deskew property is specified with a setting other than "2 - OFF".

If "1 - ON" is set, a value set in the Deskew property is applied to [Deskew Method] in the driver's [Configuration] window.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Deskew](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.63 DigitalEndorser Digital endorser setting

Feature

Sets whether the digital endorser is used.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**DigitalEndorser** [= Boolean]

Value

True Digital endorser is used.

False Digital endorser is not used.

Default

False Digital endorser is not used.

Explanation

Sets whether the digital endorser is used.

Outputting is performed on the front side.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DivideLongPage](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property is disabled due to the device type, set this property to "False" during scanning execution to perform the scan. (* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.64 DigitalEndorserCountDirection

.... Digital endorser counter step direction setting

Feature

Sets the step direction of the digital endorser counter.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**DigitalEndorserCountDirection** [= Short]

Value

0 - Add	Increases.
1 - Del	Decreases.

Default

0 - Add	Increases.
---------	------------

Explanation

Sets the step direction (increase/decrease) of the digital endorser counter.

This property is enabled only when the DigitalEndorser property is set to "True".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DigitalEndorser](#)
[DigitalEndorserCounter](#)
[DigitalEndorserCountStep](#)
[DigitalEndorserDirection](#)
[DigitalEndorserString](#)
[DigitalEndorserXOffset](#)
[DigitalEndorserYOffset](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.65 DigitalEndorserCounter Digital endorser counter default value setting

Feature

Sets the default value of the digital endorser counter.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**DigitalEndorserCounter** [= Integer]

Value

Value in the range from -1 and 0 to 99999999

When -1 is set, the digital endorser counter does not operate for outputting.

Default

0

Explanation

Sets the default value of the digital endorser counter.

If -1 is set as the setting value, the digital endorser counter does not output.

If DigitalEndorserString includes the counter character string (such as the 5-digit "%05ud"), the setting value is 3 to 8 digits (0 to 99999999), and if it does not include the character string, the setting value is 5 digits (0 to 99999).

This property is enabled only when the DigitalEndorser property is set to "True".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DigitalEndorser](#)

[DigitalEndorserCountDirection](#)

[DigitalEndorserCountStep](#)

[DigitalEndorserDirection](#)

[DigitalEndorserString](#)

[DigitalEndorserXOffset](#)

[DigitalEndorserYOffset](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

The value is not updated if it is set outside the setting range.

The value is shifted if the setting value range is exceeded due to increasing or decreasing of the digital endorser counter. If the value is 5 digits, 99999 is followed by 0.

If a jam or multifeed occurs during scanning operation where outputting is enabled, the output counter value may differ from the expected value for subsequent scanning operations. As a result, when resuming scanning after an error has occurred, be sure to set the default value of the imprinter counter.

Compatibility and Restraints

To determine whether the setting value of this property is beyond the setting range, DigitalEndorserString value at the time is referred to. Therefore, set the DigitalEndorserString before setting the DigitalEndorserCounter.

1.1.66 DigitalEndorserCountStep Digital endorser counter step value setting

Feature

Sets the step value of the digital endorser counter.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**DigitalEndorserCountStep** [= Short]

Value

0 - None	No step count
1 - 1 Step	In increments of one step count.
2 - 2 Step	In increments of two step counts.

Default

1 - 1 Step	In increments of one step count.
------------	----------------------------------

Explanation

Sets the step value of the digital endorser counter.

This property is enabled only when the DigitalEndorser property is set to "True".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DigitalEndorser](#)

[DigitalEndorserCountDirection](#)

[DigitalEndorserCounter](#)

[DigitalEndorserDirection](#)

[DigitalEndorserString](#)

[DigitalEndorserXOffset](#)

[DigitalEndorserYOffset](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.67 DigitalEndorserDirection Digital endorser output direction setting

Feature

Sets the output direction for the digital endorser.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**DigitalEndorserDirection** [= Short]

Value

0 - Top to Bottom	Outputs from top to bottom.
1 - Left to Right	Outputs from left to right.

Default

0 - Top to Bottom	Outputs from top to bottom.
-------------------	-----------------------------

Explanation

Sets the output direction for the digital endorser.

This property is enabled when the DigitalEndorser property is set to "True".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DigitalEndorser](#)

[DigitalEndorserCountDirection](#)

[DigitalEndorserCounter](#)

[DigitalEndorserCountStep](#)

[DigitalEndorserString](#)

[DigitalEndorserXOffset](#)

[DigitalEndorserYOffset](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.68 DigitalEndorserString Digital endorser character string setting

Feature

Sets the digital endorser character string.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**DigitalEndorserString** [= String]

Value

For details about values, refer to the Explanatory materials for the driver.

250 alphanumeric characters or less

Alphabets : A - Z, a - z

Numbers : 0, 1 - 9

Symbols : ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ ` { | } ~

Other characters : (space)

If you output "%", you must specify it as "%%".

Default

"" (empty character string)

Explanation

Sets the digital endorser character string.

Appends 5 digit string "%05ud" to the end of the specified string, when 0 or more is specified for the DigitalEndorserCounter property and a counter character string is not included in this property.

This property is enabled only when the DigitalEndorser property is set to "True".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DigitalEndorser](#)

[DigitalEndorserCountDirection](#)

[DigitalEndorserCounter](#)

[DigitalEndorserCountStep](#)

[DigitalEndorserDirection](#)

[DigitalEndorserXOffset](#)

[DigitalEndorserYOffset](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Characters that exceed the maximum number of characters for the digital endorser (including the counter) are not outputted.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.69 DigitalEndorserXOffset

.... Digital endorser output start position (X offset) setting

Feature

Sets the digital endorser output start position (X offset).

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**DigitalEndorserXOffset** [= Single]

Value

Sets the digital endorser output start position (X offset).

Default

0

Explanation

Sets the digital endorser output start position (X offset).

This property is enabled only when the DigitalEndorser property is set to "True".

For details on the output enable area for the digital endorser, refer to the Help for PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DigitalEndorser](#)

[DigitalEndorserCountDirection](#)

[DigitalEndorserCounter](#)

[DigitalEndorserCountStep](#)

[DigitalEndorserDirection](#)

[DigitalEndorserString](#)

[DigitalEndorserYOffset](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

Even if a value except a output enable range is set, outputting will be done the maximum of a output possibility range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.70 DigitalEndorserYOffset

.... Digital endorser output start position (Y offset) setting

Feature

Sets the digital endorser output start position (Y offset).

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**DigitalEndorserYOffset** [= Single]

Value

Sets the digital endorser output start position (Y offset).

Default

0

Explanation

Sets the digital endorser output start position (Y offset).

This property is enabled only when the DigitalEndorser property is set to "True".

For details on the output enable area for the digital endorser, refer to the Help for PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DigitalEndorser](#)

[DigitalEndorserCountDirection](#)

[DigitalEndorserCounter](#)

[DigitalEndorserCountStep](#)

[DigitalEndorserDirection](#)

[DigitalEndorserString](#)

[DigitalEndorserXOffset](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

Even if a value except a output enable range is set, outputting will be done the maximum of a output possibility range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.71 DivideLongPage Dividing long pages

Feature

Sets whether or not to divide long pages.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**DivideLongPage** [= Boolean]

Value

True Divides long pages

False Does not divide long pages

Default

False Does not divide long pages

Explanation

Sets whether or not to divide a long page into multiple images.

Specify the length of each page in the PaperSize property.

- When "True" is set for this property:

- If "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" - "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)" has been set for the PaperSupply property, the operation is not guaranteed.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[MultiStreamMode](#)

[PaperSize](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Some setting values are not supported depending on the specific device.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)".)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.72 DoubleFeed double feed detection

Feature

This property ceased to be supported after V2.0L10.

Compatibility and Restraints

This property is provided for compatibility.

Provided as a compatible for recompiling the source program created by a version of SDK older than V2.0L10 as is using an SDK version V2.0L10 or later. Note that compiling may become impossible in the future, should a major update of the version be conducted. Use the MultiFeed property rather than this property to newly create applications or modify existing programs.

1.1.73 DTCSensitivity Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary sensitivity setting

Feature

Sets the Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary sensitivity.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.DTCSensitivity [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from 0 (low) to 100 (high)

Default

50

Explanation

Sets the Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary sensitivity.

This property is enabled only when "0 - Black & White" is specified for the PixelType property and "-2" is specified for the Threshold property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 0 and 100).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.74 EdgeFiller Edge filler

Feature

Sets the edge filler.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EdgeFiller** [= Short]

Value

0 - Off	Edge is not filled.
1 - Black	Edge is filled with black.
2 - White	Edge is filled with white.

Default

0 - Off	Edge is not filled.
---------	---------------------

Explanation

The excess data for the document shadow and other sections that appear at the edge of the scanned image are filled with a specified color for improving the appearance.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.75 EdgeFillerBottom Edge filler bottom edge area setting

Feature

Sets the edge filler area at the bottom edge of the paper size.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EdgeFillerBottom** [= Single]

Value

Sets the edge filler area at the bottom edge of the paper size.

Default

0

Explanation

Sets how much of the area is filled from the bottom edge of the paper size.

This property is enabled only when the EdgeFiller property is specified with a setting other than "0 - OFF".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[EdgeFiller](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

If a value larger than 1 cm (0.394 in) is set, 1 cm (0.394 in) is set during scanning, and the edge filler process is performed.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.76 EdgeFillerLeft Edge filler left edge area setting

Feature

Sets the edge filler area at the left edge of the paper size.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EdgeFillerLeft** [= Single]

Value

Sets the edge filler area at the left edge of the paper size.

Default

0

Explanation

Sets how much of the area is filled from the left edge of the paper size.

This property is enabled only when the EdgeFiller property is specified with a setting other than "0 - OFF".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[EdgeFiller](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

If a value larger than 1 cm (0.394 in) is set, 1 cm (0.394 in) is set during scanning, and the edge filler process is performed.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.77 EdgeFillerRight Edge filler right edge area setting

Feature

Sets the edge filler area at the right edge of the paper size.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EdgeFillerRight** [= Single]

Value

Sets the edge filler area at the right edge of the paper size.

Default

0

Explanation

Sets how much of the area is filled from the right edge of the paper size.

This property is enabled only when the EdgeFiller property is specified with a setting other than "0 - OFF".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[EdgeFiller](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

If a value larger than 1 cm (0.394 in) is set, 1 cm (0.394 in) is set during scanning, and the edge filler process is performed.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.78 EdgeFillerTop Edge filler top edge area setting

Feature

Sets the edge filler area at the top edge of the paper size.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EdgeFillerTop** [= Single]

Value

Sets the edge filler area at the top edge of the paper size.

Default

0

Explanation

Sets how much of the area is filled from the top edge of the paper size.

This property is enabled only when the EdgeFiller property is specified with a setting other than "0 - OFF".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[EdgeFiller](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

If a value larger than 1 cm (0.394 in) is set, 1 cm (0.394 in) is set during scanning, and the edge filler process is performed.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.79 EdgeRepair Edge filler repair

Feature

Sets the edge filler repair.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EdgeRepair** [= Boolean]

Value

True Edge filler is repaired.

False Edge filler is not repaired.

Default

False Edge filler is not repaired.

Explanation

This repairs bends of the document and other problems that appear on the edge of the scanned image.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.80 Endorser Endorser / Imprinter setting

Feature

Sets whether or not to use the endorser/imprinter.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Endorser** [= Boolean]

Value

True Uses the endorser/imprinter.

False Does not use the endorser/imprinter.

Default

False Does not use the endorser/imprinter.

Explanation

Sets whether or not to use the endorser/imprinter.

Enabled for scanners with an endorser/imprinter option.

Some scanners support both the Pre-imprinter (Pre-endorser) and Post-imprinter (Post-endorser). If these two types of imprinters (endorsers) are installed together, the Post-imprinter (Post-endorser) has higher priority than the Pre-imprinter (Pre-endorser) for printing; if either of these imprinters (endorsers) is installed, and the installed one is used for printing.

Some scanners support both the Post-imprinter front (Post-endorser front) and Post-imprinter back (Post-endorser back). If these two types of imprinters (endorsers) are installed together, the Post-imprinter front (Post-endorser front) has higher priority than the Post-imprinter back (Post-endorser back) for printing.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DivideLongPage](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

And if this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, sets it to "False" when scanning to carry out a scan. (* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.81 EndorserCountDirection

.... Endorser / Imprinter counter step direction setting

Feature

Sets the step direction of the endorser/imprinter counter.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EndorserCountDirection** [= Short]

Value

0 - Add	Adds.
1 - Del	Deletes.

Default

0 - Add	Adds.
---------	-------

Explanation

Sets the step direction (increase/decrease) of the endorser/imprinter counter.

This property is enabled only when the Endorser property is set to "True."

Enabled for scanners with an endorser/imprinter option.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Endorser](#)

[EndorserCounter](#)

[EndorserCountStep](#)

[EndorserDirection](#)

[EndorserFont](#)

[EndorserOffset](#)

[EndorserString](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.82 EndorserCounter Endorser / Imprinter counter default setting

Feature

Sets the default of the endorser/imprinter counter.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EndorserCounter** [= Integer]

Value

Values in the range of -1 and 0 to 99999999 (when the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver is used)

Values in the range of -1 and 0 to 16777215 (when the FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver is used)

When -1 is set, the endorser/imprinter counter does not operate for printing.

Default

0

Explanation

Sets the default of the endorser/imprinter counter.

When -1 is set as the setting value, the endorser/imprinter counter does not operate for printing.

With the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver, 3 to 8 digits (0 to 99999999) can be set for the value if a counter character string (such as a 5 digit string "%05ud") is included in EndorserString. If it is not included, a 5 digit value (0 to 99999) can be set.

With the FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver, 8 digits (0 to 16777215) or 3 to 7 digits (0 to 99999) can be set for the value if a counter character string is included in EndorserString. If it is not included, a 5 digit value (0 to 99999) can be set.

This property is enabled only when the Endorser property is set to "True."

Enabled for scanners with an endorser/imprinter option.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Endorser](#)

[EndorserCountDirection](#)

[EndorserCountStep](#)

[EndorserDirection](#)

[EndorserFont](#)

[EndorserOffset](#)

[EndorserString](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

The imprinter/endorser counter is reset to zero when the setting range (either in increment or decrement mode) is exceeded. For example, if the counter is of five digits, it is reset to zero when the maximum count (99999) is reached. Note that the counting results with an eight-digit counter vary depending on the scanner model to use. For details, refer to the

Explanatory materials for the TWAIN driver.

If a paper jam or multifeed occurs during a scan with printing enabled, the printing counter value for the following scan may differ from the expected value. Therefore, before restarting the scan that was interrupted by an error, make sure to set the initial value of the printing counter.

Compatibility and Restraints

To determine whether the setting value of this property is beyond the setting range, Endorser String value at the time is referred to. Therefore, set the Endorser String before setting the Endorser Counter.

1.1.83 EndorserCountStep Endorser / Imprinter counter step count setting

Feature

Sets the step count of the endorser/imprinter counter.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EndorserCountStep** [= Short]

Value

0 - None	No step count
1 - 1 Step	In increments of one step count.
2 - 2 Step	In increments of two step counts.

Default

1 - 1 Step	In increments of one step count.
------------	----------------------------------

Explanation

Sets the step count of the endorser/imprinter counter.

This property is enabled only when the Endorser property is set to "True."

Enabled for scanners with an endorser/imprinter option.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Endorser](#)

[EndorserCountDirection](#)

[EndorserCounter](#)

[EndorserDirection](#)

[EndorserFont](#)

[EndorserOffset](#)

[EndorserString](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.84 EndorserDialog Endorser / Imprinter print settings window

Feature

Sets whether or not to display the endorser/imprinter print settings window when scanning starts.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EndorserDialog** [= Short]

Value

0 - OFF The endorser/imprinter print settings window is not displayed.

1 - ON The endorser/imprinter print settings window is displayed.

Default

0 - OFF The endorser/imprinter print settings window is not displayed.

Explanation

Sets whether or not to display the endorser/imprinter print settings window when scanning starts.

This property is enabled only when the Endorser property is set to "True."

Enabled for scanners with an endorser/imprinter option.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

For details on the displayed window, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Endorser](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.85 EndorserDirection Endorser / Imprinter print direction setting

Feature

Sets the print direction of the endorser/imprinter.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EndorserDirection** [= Short]

Value

1 - ToUnder	Prints from top to bottom.
3 - ToUpper	Prints from bottom to top.

Default

1 - ToUnder	Prints from top to bottom.
-------------	----------------------------

Explanation

Sets the print direction of the endorser/imprinter,

This property is enabled only when the Endorser property is set to "True."

Enabled for scanners with an endorser/imprinter option.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Endorser](#)

[EndorserCountDirection](#)

[EndorserCounter](#)

[EndorserCountStep](#)

[EndorserFont](#)

[EndorserOffset](#)

[EndorserString](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.86 EndorserFont Endorser / Imprinter print font setting

Feature

Sets the print font of the endorser/imprinter.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EndorserFont** [= Short]

Value

0 - Horizontal	Horizontal standard font
1 - Vertical	Vertical standard font
2 - Horizontal-Narrow	Horizontal narrow font
3 - Horizontal-Bold	Horizontal bold font
4 - Vertical-Bold	Vertical bold font

Default

0 - Horizontal	Horizontal standard font
----------------	--------------------------

Explanation

Sets the print font of the endorser/imprinter.

This property is enabled only when the Endorser property is set to "True".

This is enabled only for scanners that include the endorser/imprinter option.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Endorser](#)

[EndorserCountDirection](#)

[EndorserCounter](#)

[EndorserCountStep](#)

[EndorserDirection](#)

[EndorserOffset](#)

[EndorserString](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.87 EndorserOffset Endorser / Imprinter start print position setting

Feature

Sets the print start position of the endorser/imprinter.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EndorserOffset** [= Single]

Value

Sets the print start position of the endorser/imprinter.

Default

0

Explanation

Sets the print start position of the endorser/imprinter.

This property is enabled only when the Endorser property is set to "True."

Enabled for scanners with an endorser/imprinter option.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

For the printable area of the endorser/imprinter, refer to the User's Guide for your device.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Endorser](#)

[EndorserCountDirection](#)

[EndorserCounter](#)

[EndorserCountStep](#)

[EndorserDirection](#)

[EndorserFont](#)

[EndorserString](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Even if a value except a printable range is set, printing will be done the maximum of a print possibility range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.88 EndorserString Endorser / Imprinter string setting

Feature

Sets the string for the endorser/imprinter.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**EndorserString** [= String]

Value

For details about values, refer to the Explanatory materials for the driver.

40 alphanumeric characters or less

Alphabets	: A - Z, a - z
Numbers	: 0, 1 - 9
Symbols	: ! " # \$ % & ' () * + , - . / : ; < = > ? @ [\] ^ _ ` { } ~
Others	: (space)

If you print "%", you must specify it as "%%".

Default

"" (empty character string)

Explanation

Sets the string for the endorser/imprinter.

The specified character string is printed on the document by the endorser/imprinter.

Appends 5 digit string "%05ud" to the end of the specified string, when 0 or more is specified for the EndorserCounter property and a counter character string is not included in this property.

This property is enabled only when the Endorser property is set to "True."

Enabled for scanners with an endorser/imprinter option.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

For the maximum number of characters for the endorser/imprinter, refer to the User's Guide for your device.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Endorser](#)

[EndorserCountDirection](#)

[EndorserCounter](#)

[EndorserCountStep](#)

[EndorserDirection](#)

[EndorserFont](#)

[EndorserOffset](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

The number of characters (including the Counter) printable with endorser/imprinter is limited, and those exceed the maximum number are not printed.

Compatibility and Restraints
N/A

1.1.89 ErrorCode Error information acquisition

Feature

Gets error information.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ErrorCode** [= Long]

Value

N/A Property only for value reference purpose.

Default

0x00000000 : EC_SUCCESS No error

Explanation

Property to get error information when methods end abnormally.

Initialized to EC_SUCCESS when methods are called.

See the Error List in section "3.1 Error code and how to fix error."

Target method

All methods except [AboutBox](#).

Related Properties

[SilentMode](#)

Value Setting

Not possible.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

For how to handle errors, refer to "3.1 Error code and how to fix error."

Compatibility and Restraints

-Includes errors displayed by the TWAIN driver.

-Depending on the specifications of the scanner, a paper jam (0x00000003:EC_JAM) may be reported at the next scan, not at the completion of the target document processing.

Specifically, it is the case where the document does not pass the top sensor after the leading end of the document reaches the top sensor inside the scanner.

1.1.90 FadingCompensation

.... Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary fading compensation

Feature

Sets the compensation of the fading section of the image during Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary scanning.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FadingCompensation** [= Short]

Value

- 0 - No compensation is performed.
- 1 - 5 - Higher values result in higher likelihood of compensation.

Default

- 0 - No compensation is performed.

Explanation

Sets the compensation of the fading section of the image during Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary scanning.

This property is enabled only when "0 - Black & White" is specified for the PixelType property and "-2" is specified for the Threshold property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

This property is ignored when the device does not support this property.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.91 FileCounter file serial number setting

Feature

Sets the serial numbers of files.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FileCounter** [= Integer]

Value

Value in the range from -1 and 0 to 65535

If -1 is set, the serial number setting is not used.

Default

1

Explanation

Sets the beginning of a "serial number" for the file name when saving.

The file actually created will be "FileName property" plus "serial number." extension. (For "Multipage TIFF" and "Multipage PDF," the value of the FileCounter property when the StartScan method is called will be used for the file name, and the filename remains the same until a scan is complete (until the StartScan call ends).

This property is incremented (increased by 1 count) every time a sheet (page) is scanned. (For "Multipage TIFF" and "Multipage PDF," too, the number of scanned sheets (pages) will be increased from when the StartScan method is called until a scan is complete (until the StartScan call ends).

If the scan count exceeds 65535, it will be reset to 1 to continue scanning.

If duplex scanning is specified, this property is incremented by 2 per sheet (face and back - 2 pages).

If "-1" is set for this property, a serial number is not set for the file name, and only the file name is used.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

[OpenScanner](#)

[OpenScanner2](#)

Related Properties

[FileName](#)

[FileType](#)

[MultiStreamFileNameMode](#)

[MultiStreamMode](#)

[ScanCount](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

The value is not updated if it is set to a value outside the range (outside the range of -1 and 0 to 65535).

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.92 FileCounter1, FileCounter2, FileCounter3

.... file serial number settings for files created from each output image

Feature

Sets an initial value for each serial number that will be added to a file name when a file created from each output image is saved.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FileCounter1** [= Integer]
[form.] scancontrolname.**FileCounter2** [= Integer]
[form.] scancontrolname.**FileCounter3** [= Integer]

Value

Value in the range from -1 and 0 to 65535

If -1 is set, the serial number setting is not used.

Default

1

Explanation

Sets an initial value for each serial number that will be added to a file name for each image when multiple images created from a side of a document that is scanned are output.

Files that are actually created have the following names.

"FileName1 property" + "Serial number" (The initial value is FileCounter1).extension

"FileName2 property" + "Serial number" (The initial value is FileCounter2).extension

"FileName3 property" + "Serial number" (The initial value is FileCounter3).extension

Every time a sheet (one page) is scanned, the value for this property is incremented by 1.

If the scan count exceeds 65535, it will be reset to 1 to continue scanning.

If duplex scanning is specified, this property is incremented by 2 per sheet (face and back - 2 pages).

When "-1" is set for this property, the serial number is not added to the file name.

This property is enabled when "1 - 2 MultiImage" or "2 - 3 MultiImage" is set for the MultiStreamMode property and "1 - ON" is set for the MultiStreamFileNameMode property.

This property cannot be used together with the FileName property.

Do not configure this property in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event of the MultiStreamMode property. Configure this property before the StartScan method instead.

This property cannot be configured in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

[OpenScanner](#)

[OpenScanner2](#)

Related Properties

[FileName1, FileName2, FileName3](#)

[FileType](#)

[MultiStreamFileNameMode](#)

[MultiStreamMode](#)

[ScanCount](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

The value is not updated if it is set to a value outside the range (outside the range of -1 and 0 to 65535).

Compatibility and Restraints

- This property does not support Java.

1.1.93 FileName file name

Feature

Sets the file name for storing the image. (Extension not included)

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FileName** [= String]

Value

The file name for storing the image (string that ends with NULL, including the absolute path name).

Extension does not need to be included because it will be given by the Control (OCX).

Default

"" (empty character string)

Explanation

Sets the file name to be output (does not need to set extension).

This property is enabled only when the ScanTo property is set to "0 - File."

In addition, the file name to be actually created will include the file name set with this property, a 3-digit serial number, and the extension of the image data format set for the FileType.

For example:

FileType = "1-TIFF"

if set to FileName = "C: \ IMAGE \ IMG"

and when three pages are scanned,

the three image files - IMG001.tif, IMG002.tif, and IMG003.tif - will be created in the C: \ IMAGE \ folder.

In case files with such names are already present, the files will be handled according to what is specified for the Overwrite property.

\ * ? " < > | If any of these characters is included, files cannot be created.

It is possible to add a serial number with the specified number of digits to the specified position by specifying # for the file name.

1 - 5 digits can be specified using #.

Example)

img#	→ img1
img###vvv	→ img001vvv
img#####v	→ img00001v

If the serial number is advanced by one place, the places totally required for it are automatically secured.

For example:

If set to FileName = "C: \ IMAGE \ IMG#"

and when ten pages are scanned, the file named IMG10 will be created for the tenth page.

If "-1" is set for the FileCounter property, a serial number is not added. If # is added, the # also becomes part of the file name.

Example)

img	→ img
img#	→ img#
img###vvv	→ img###vvv
img#####v	→ img#####v

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to ["3.2 Relationships Between Properties"](#).

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ScanTo](#)

[FileCounter](#)

[FileType](#)

[MultiStreamFileNameMode](#)

[MultiStreamMode](#)

[Overwrite](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

When scanning, checks whether or not it is possible to create the file using the file name actually set. Sets the error code like EC_CANNOT_MAKE and returns RC_FAILURE when the file name set is not correct (like when files cannot be created).

If "" (empty character string) is set, displays the file name input dialog (Windows shared dialog) when scanning.

Compatibility and Restraints

Do not use # for folder names. Otherwise, files will not be created correctly.

1.1.94 FileName1, FileName2, FileName3

.... file names used for each output image

Feature

Sets the file names used for saving files for each output image. (excluding extensions).

Coding Style

```
[form.] scancontrolname.FileName1  [= String ]  
[form.] scancontrolname.FileName2  [= String ]  
[form.] scancontrolname.FileName3  [= String ]
```

Value

File names used for saving files for each output image (string that ends with NULL, including the absolute path name).

Extension does not need to be included because it will be given by the Control (OCX).

Default

"" (empty character string)

Explanation

Sets a file name for each image when multiple images created from a side of a document that is scanned are output. (does not need to set extension.)

This property is enabled when "1 - 2 Multimage" or "2 - 3 Multimage" is set for the MultiStreamMode property and "1 - ON" is set for the MultiStreamFileNameMode property.

Actual file names are created in the following steps: (1) The 3-digit serial numbers are added to file names that are set in this property. (2) Extensions that are set in FileType for each scanning side are added to the file names created in step (1).

The FileCounter property cannot be used together with this property. To set the file numbers, use the FileCounter1 property, the FileCounter2 property, and the FileCounter3 property.

In case files with such names are already present, the files will be handled according to what is specified for the Overwrite property.

In addition, if some file names from among the file names FileName1, FileName2, and FileName3 are the same, the file that is output later will be handled according to what is specified for the Overwrite property.

\ * ? " < > | If any of these characters is included, files cannot be created.

It is possible to add a serial number with the specified number of digits to the specified position by specifying # for the file name. 1 - 5 digits can be specified using #.

Do not configure this property in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event of the MultiStreamMode property. Configure this property before the StartScan method instead.

This property cannot be configured in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[FileCounter1, FileCounter2, FileCounter3](#)

[FileType](#)

[MultiStreamFileNameMode](#)

[MultiStreamMode](#)

[Overwrite](#)

[ScanTo](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

When scanning, checks whether or not it is possible to create the file using the file name actually set. Sets the error code like EC_CANNOT_MAKE and returns RC_FAILURE when the file name set is not correct (like when files cannot be created).

When "1 - 2 Multimage" or "2 - 3 Multimage" is set for the MultiStreamMode property, "1 – ON" is set for the MultiStreamFileNameMode property, and "" (empty character string) is set for this property, an "EC_ERROR_UNSETTING_FILENAME" error occurs.

Compatibility and Restraints

- Do not use # for folder names. Otherwise, files will not be created correctly.
- This property does not support Java.

1.1.95 FileType file format (image data format)

Feature

Sets the file format .

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FileType** [= Short]

Value

0 - BMP	Bitmap file
1 - TIFF	TIFF file
2 - Multipage TIFF	Multipage TIFF file
3 - JPEG	JPEG file
4 - PDF	PDF file
5 - Multipage PDF	Multipage PDF file
6 - Multi Image Output	Multi-image output(Black and white: TIFF file, Others: JPEG file)
7 - Auto Color Detection	Auto color detection(Black and white: TIFF file, Others: JPEG file)

Default

1 - TIFF TIFF file

Explanation

Sets the image data format of a file to output.

This property is enabled only when the ScanTo property is set to "0 - File."

(This property will be disregarded if any value other than the above is set.)

-To set "1 - TIF" and "2 - Multipage TIFF" for this property and "1 - Grayscale" or "2 - RGB" for the PixelType property, be sure to set "0 - No Compress", "5 - JPEG" or "6 - Old JPEG" for the CompressionType property.

-To set "3 - JPEG" for this property, be sure to set "1 - Grayscale" or "2 - RGB" for the PixelType property.

-To set "4 - PDF" and "5 - Multipage PDF" for this property:

- If the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black&White," set any value other than "5 - JPEG" for the CompressionType property. (Unconditionally saved using MMR compression if "5 - JPEG" is specified.)

- If the PixelType property is set to "1 - Grayscale," be sure to set "0 - No Compress" for the CompressionType property.

- If the PixelType property is set to "2 - RGB," be sure to set "0 - No Compress" or "5 - JPEG" for the CompressionType property. (Unconditionally saved using JPEG compression if other value is specified.)

-When setting "6 - Multi Image Output" for this property

- Binary (black and white) and non-binary two images must be output in the same page. Set "True" for the SourceCurrentScan property and enable Multi Image Output in the FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver, Multi Image in the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver, or select "Generate B&W and Color images simultaneously" in the Image Processing Software Operation.

- The CompressionType property is disabled. For TIFF files, the compression format will be CCITT G4, and for JPEG files, it will be JPEG.

- The same file name will be used for the TIFF and JPEG files from the identical page (only the extensions will be different).

- If you want to set properties for each image, use "1 - 2 MultiImage" or "2 - 3 MultiImage" in the MultiStreamMode property.

-When setting "7 - Auto Color Detection" for this property

- Set "True" for the SourceCurrentScan property and enable "Auto Color Detection" in the TWAIN driver.

- The CompressionType property is disabled. For TIFF files, the compression format will be CCITT G4, and for JPEG files, it will be JPEG.
- TIFF files and JPEG files are counted separately by the page counter.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[CompressionType](#)

[JpegQuality](#)

[PixelType](#)

[ScanCount](#)

[ScanTo](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.96 Filter dropout color

Feature

Sets the dropout color.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **Filter** [= Short]

Value

0 - Green Drops out green.

1 - Red Drops out red.

2 - Blue Drops out blue.

3 - None No dropout.

4 - White Drops out white.

5 - Saturation Drops out chromatic colors.

6 - Specified by device Specified by device (Dropout color specified by the device)

99 - Custom1 Specify the Pattern 1, which is configured using the user interface of the source.

100 - Custom2 Specify the Pattern 2, which is configured using the user interface of the source.

101 - Custom3 Specify the Pattern 3, which is configured using the user interface of the source.

102 - Custom4 Specify the Pattern 4, which is configured using the user interface of the source.

Default

0 - Green Drops out green.

Explanation

Of green, red, blue, and white, capable of scanning by removing any of the color information you have selected. For example, when scanning black letters with red outlines, it is possible to scan only black letters by selecting red for this property to scan.

For chromatic colors, scanning can be performed by excluding any color information such as green, red, or blue. Set the sensitivity of the chromatic color by specifying the FilterSaturationSensitivity property.

For scanner with the custom pattern option, you can specify custom patterns that have been configured through the user interface of the source.

For information about the custom pattern, see the Explanatory materials for the TWAIN driver.

This property is enabled only when the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black & White" or "1 - Grayscale." Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ScanTo](#)

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If a value is specified beyond the range, the value will not be updated.

Depending on the scanners, some setting values are not supported.

(* See section "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

If an unsupported value on the scanner is specified, the TWAIN driver changes the setting value to another valid one when scanning is performed.

For scanning with a specified custom pattern using the TWAIN32 driver, if the StartScan method is issued before the custom pattern is specified, an error such as RC_CANCEL or RC_FAILURE occurs. The value obtained from the ErrorCode property is indefinite.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.97 FilterSaturationSensitivity Chromatic dropout color sensitivity setting

Feature

Sets the chromatic dropout color sensitivity.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FilterSaturationSensitivity** [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from 0 (low) to 100 (high)

Default

50

Explanation

This property is enabled only when "5 - Saturation" is set for the Filter property.

For chromatic colors, scanning can be performed by excluding any color information such as green, red, or blue.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Filter](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Some setting values are not supported depending on the specific device.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)".)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.98 FrontBackDetection ID card automatic detection

Feature

Sets the ID card automatic detection setting.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FrontBackDetection** [= Short]

Value

0 - None	Do not detect
1 - Swap	Detect (Swap if incorrect)
2 - Swap and Remove Back Side	Detect (Swap if incorrect and remove back side)

Default

0 - None	Do not detect
----------	---------------

Explanation

Swap the front and back side images of an ID card so that the side with the photo of a face is the front side. This property is enabled only when "2 - ADF(Duplex)" is set as the PaperSupply property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Some setting values are not supported depending on the specific device.
(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)".)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.99 FrontBackMergingEnabled

.... Setting for merging the front and back side images

Feature

Sets whether or not to merge the front and back side images. .

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FrontBackMergingEnabled** [= Boolean]

Value

True Merges the front and back sides.

False Does not merge the front and back sides.

Default

False Does not merge the front and back sides.

Explanation

Sets whether or not to merge the front and back side images.

- When "True" is set for this property:

- If "23 - 8.5 x 106.3 inch" - "27 - 8.5 x 220 inch", "32 - 12 x 125 inch", "34 - 12 x 106.3 inch" - "37 - 12 x 220 inch" has been set for the PaperSize property, the PaperSize property will be set to the default paper size.

- If "9 - 1200x1200 [dpi]" has been set for the Resolution property, the Resolution property will be set to "2 - 300x300 [dpi]".

- If "0 - Flatbed", "1 - ADF", or "3 - ADF(BackSide)" has been set for the PaperSupply property, the PaperSupply property operates as if set to "2 - ADF(Duplex)".

- If "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" - "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)" has been set for the PaperSupply property, the operation is not guaranteed.

- If "4 - Automatic" has been set for the Rotation property, the Rotation property will be set to "0 - None".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[MultiStreamMode](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)".)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.100 FrontBackMergingLocation

.... Setting for the way of merging the front and back side images

Feature

Sets the way of merging the front and back side images..

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FrontBackMergingLocation** [= Short]

Value

0 - Upper Places the back side above the front side.

1 - Lower Places the back side below the front side.

2 - Left Places the back side to the left of the front side.

3 - Right Places the back side to the right of the front side.

Default

3 - Right Places the back side to the right of the front side.

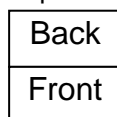
Explanation

Sets the way of merging the front and back side images.

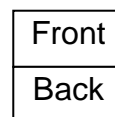
This property is enabled only when the FrontBackMergingEnabled property is set to "True".

The back side is positioned in each merged image as shown below.

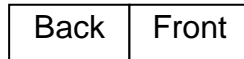
"0 - Upper"



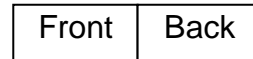
"1 - Lower"



"2 - Left"



"3 - Right"



Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to ["3.2 Relationships Between Properties"](#).

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[FrontBackMergingRotation](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out with this property set to "3 - Right".(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)".)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.101 FrontBackMergingRotation

.... Setting for the angle to rotate the back side when merging the front and back side images

Feature

Sets the angle to rotate the back side when merging the front and back side images. .

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FrontBackMergingRotation** [= Short]

Value

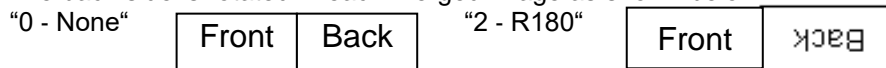
0 - None Does not rotate the back side.
2 - R180 Rotates the back side 180 degrees.

Default

0 - None Does not rotate the back side.

Explanation

Sets the angle to rotate the back side when merging the front and back side images.
This property is enabled only when the FrontBackMergingEnabled property is set to "True".
The back side is rotated in each merged image as shown below.



Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)
[FrontBackMergingLocation](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out with this property set to "0 - None". (* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)".)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.102 FrontBackMergingTarget

.... Setting a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged

Feature

Sets a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FrontBackMergingTarget** [= Short]

Value

0 - All	All types of documents
1 - Short	Documents with a length that is equal to or shorter than the criteria
2 - Long	Documents with a length that is equal to or longer than the criteria

Default

0 - All	All types of documents
---------	------------------------

Explanation

Sets a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged based on the criteria that is specified for the FrontBackMergingTargetSize property.

This property is enabled only when the FrontBackMergingEnabled property is set to "True".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[FrontBackMergingTargetMode](#)

[FrontBackMergingTargetSize](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on the device type, a scan will be carried out with this property set to "0 - All" when a scanning operation is performed.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)".)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.103 FrontBackMergingTargetMode

.... Setting the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged

Feature

Sets the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged. .

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FrontBackMergingTargetMode** [= Short]

Value

1 - Custom	Sets custom size.
2 - CardSize	Sets card size or a size smaller as the criteria.

Default

1 - Custom	Sets custom size.
------------	-------------------

Explanation

Sets the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged.

This property is enabled only when "True" is specified for the FrontBackMergingEnabled property and a value other than "0 - All" is specified for the FrontBackMergingTarget property.

When "1 - Custom " is set for this property, based on the criteria that is specified for the FrontBackMergingTargetSize property, if "1 - Short" is specified for the FrontBackMergingTarget, the front and back side images of a document that is equal to or shorter than the criteria are merged, and if "2 - Long" is specified for the FrontBackMergingTarget, the front and back side images of a document that is equal to or longer than the criteria are merged.

When "2 - CardSize" is set for this property, the front and back side images of a document that is equal to or shorter than card size are merged regardless of whether "1 - Short" or "2 - Long" is specified for the FrontBackMergingTarget.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[FrontBackMergingTarget](#)

[FrontBackMergingTargetSize](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on the device type, a scan will be carried out with this property set to "1 - Custom" when a scanning operation is performed. (* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)".)

Compatibility and Restraints
N/A

1.1.104 FrontBackMergingTargetSize

.... Setting the length for the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back images are to be merged

Feature

Sets the length for the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FrontBackMergingTargetSize** [= Single]

Value

Sets the length for the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged.

1 inch (2.54cm) or longer

Default

1 inch (2.54cm)

Explanation

Sets the length for the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged.

This property is enabled only when "True" is specified for the FrontBackMergingEnabled property, a value other than "0 - All" is specified for the FrontBackMergingTarget property, and "1 - Custom" is specified for the FrontBackMergingTargetMode property.

The length selected for the PaperSize property is the maximum length.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[FrontBackMergingTarget](#)

[FrontBackMergingTargetMode](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.105 Gamma gamma adjustment

Feature

Sets the gamma adjustment mode.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **Gamma** [= Short]

Value

0 - None		N/A or Standard
1 - Soft		Soft
2 - Sharp	Sharp	
3 - Gamma Pattern File		Download (Specifies the gamma pattern file.)
4 - Custom		Custom (Specifies the gamma value.)
5 - Bright	Bright	
6 - Standard		Standard

Explanation

Sets the nonlinearity correction for images.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Default

0 - None

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBright](#)

[Brightness](#)

[CustomGamma](#)

[Contrast](#)

[GammaFile](#)

[Highlight](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

[Shadow](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

And because some values are not supported depending on devices, in such a case, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

In V1.0, the value 2-Sharp is described as 2-Hard. Note that both are the same value.

1.1.106 GammaFile gamma pattern file name

Feature

Specifies the gamma pattern file.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**GammaFile** [= String]

Value

Gamma pattern file name (string that ends with NULL, including the absolute path name).

Default

"" (empty character string)

Explanation

Sets any gamma pattern file.

For pattern files, refer to the Explanatory materials for the TWAIN driver.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Gamma](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

When the Gamma property is set to value other than "3 - Gamma Pattern File," this property is ignored.

If specified character strings are null, or if no configured files exist, set the Gamma property to "0 - None" and scan the document.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.107 Halftone halftone

Feature

Sets the halftone pattern.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Halftone** [= Short]

Value

0 - None	N/A
1 - Dither Pattern 0	For dark photo images
2 - Dither Pattern 1	For a mixture of dark letters and photos
3 - Dither Pattern 2	For light photo images
4 - Dither Pattern 3	For a mixture of light letters and photos
5 - Dither Pattern File	Download (Specifies the halftone pattern file.)
6 - Error Diffusion	Error diffusion method

Default

0 - None	N/A
----------	-----

Explanation

This property sets a pattern to be used for halftone.

Halftone expresses grayscale images in pseudo gradation using halftone dots (pattern). It is possible to select the dither pattern (1-4) incorporated in the device, download (5), or error diffusion method (6).

Halftone is suitable for scanning images with shading like photos.

This property is enabled only when "0 - Black & White" is set for the PixelType property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[CompressionType](#)

[PixelType](#)

[HalftoneFile](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If "1 - Grayscale" or "2 - RGB" has been set for the PixelType property, a scan will be executed without regard to this property.

And because some values are not supported depending on devices, in such a case, a scan will be carried out by setting this property as "1 - Dither Pattern 0" when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.108 HalftoneFile halftone pattern file

Feature

Specifies the halftone pattern file.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**HalftoneFile** [= String]

Value

Halftone pattern file name (string that ends with NULL, including the absolute path name).

Default

"" (empty character string)

Explanation

Specifies any halftone pattern file.

For pattern files, refer to the Explanatory materials for the TWAIN driver.

This property is enabled only when "0 - Black & White" is set for the PixelType property and "5 - Dither Pattern File" is set for the Halftone property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

[Halftone](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

This property is disregarded when "0 - Black & White" is set for the PixelType property and any value other than "5 - Dither Pattern File" is set for the Halftone property.

If an empty string is set, or if there is no file set, sets the Halftone property as "0 - None" when scanning to carry out a scan.

If the setting for the Halftone property as "5 - Dither Pattern File" (which specifies halftone pattern file) is not supported depending on devices, sets the Halftone property as "1 - Dither Pattern 0" when scanning to carry out a scan.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.109 Highlight highlight

Feature

Sets highlights.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Highlight** [= Short]

Value

Between 1 and 255.

Default

230

Explanation

Sets highlighting for images when scanning.

This property is enabled only when either "1 - Grayscale" or "2 - RGB" is set as the PixelType property.

This property is invalid when the PaperSupply property is set as "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)", "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)", "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)", or "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBright](#)

[Gamma](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 255).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.110 HwCompression Transfer mode of the hardware

Feature

Sets the transfer mode of the hardware.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.HwCompression [= Boolean]

Value

False	JPEG transfer
True	Uncompressed transfer

Default

False JPEG transfer

Explanation

Sets the transfer mode of the hardware.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.111 ImageScanner image scanner name acquisition

Feature

Gets the product name of the image scanner.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ImageScanner** [= String]

Value

N/A Property only for value reference purpose.

Default

"" (empty character string)

Explanation

Gets the product name of the FUJITSU fi Series image Scanner connected.
(Example: "fi-7160dj")

Target method

[OpenScanner](#)

[OpenScanner2](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Value Setting

Not possible.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

Reference this property after calling the OpenScanner method or OpenScanner2 method.
(This property is set using the OpenScanner method or OpenScanner2 method.)

1.1.112 Indicator progress indicator setting

Feature

Sets whether to show the progress indicator while scanning.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Indicator** [= Boolean]

Value

True Show the progress indicator.

False Do not show the progress indicator.

Default

True Show the progress indicator.

Explanation

Sets whether to show the progress indicator while scanning.

This property is enabled only when the ShowSourceUI property is "False".

If the ShowSourceUI property is set to "True", the Indicator property operates as if set to "True" regardless of its actual setting.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ShowSourceUI](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.113 IsExistsFB image scanner's flatbed (FB) support

Feature

Gets the device information regarding whether flatbed (FB) is supported.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**IsExistsFB** [= Boolean]

Value

N/A Property only for value reference purpose.

Default

True Supported.

False Unsupported.

Explanation

Gets the device information regarding whether the image scanner currently connected supports flatbed (FB).

Target method

[OpenScanner](#)

[OpenScanner2](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

Not possible.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

Obtain the value after calling the OpenScanner method or OpenScanner2 method.
(This property is set by the OpenScanner method or OpenScanner2 method.)

1.1.114 JobControl job control setting

Feature

Sets the job control.

* Job control refers to the process control when a special document (document with a specific shape) or patch code document is detected.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**JobControl** [= Short]

Value

0 - None	Does not detect special documents or patch code documents.
1 - Include and Continue	Scans special documents and patch code documents, and operation continues.
2 - Include and Stop	Scans special documents and patch code documents, and operation is aborted.
3 - Exclude and Continue	Skips special documents and patch code documents, and operation continues.
4 - Exclude and Stop	Skips special documents and patch code documents, and operation is aborted.

Default

0 - None	Does not detect special documents or patch code documents.
----------	--

Explanation

Sets the job control.

When a special document or patch code document is detected during continuous scanning using an ADF, a DetectJobSeparator event is issued to perform control based on the above setting value (1 to 4).

(When the setting has been made with the UI of the TWAIN driver, the above event is issued without regard to this property.)

Set the job control type using the JobControlMode property.

For details, refer to the [DetectJobSeparator](#) event.

Note: If the first document to be scanned is a special document or patch code document, the document type is not correctly identified and the job control does not work properly. Do not place a special document or patch code document for the first document.

* The special document refers to the document with A4 width or greater, and its front end being shaped as shown in the figure below, having a cutout of 15mm per side in the middle.

Target method

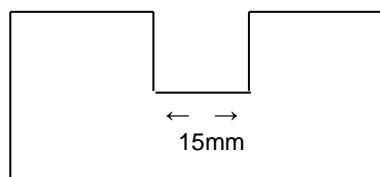
[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DivideLongPage](#)

[JobControlMode](#)

[PaperSupply](#)



Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Because this property is not supported depending on devices, it may be disabled.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

* For the details of special documents, refer to the User's Guide for your device.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.115 JobControlMode Job control type setting

Feature

Sets the type of job control document.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**JobControlMode** [= Short]

Value

0 - Special Document

1 - Patch Code Document

Default

0 - Special Document

Explanation

Sets the type of job control document.

This property is enabled only when a setting other than "0 - None" is set for the JobControl property.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[JobControl](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Because this property is not supported depending on devices, it may be disabled.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.1.116 JpegQuality Jpeg data compression level


Feature

Specifies the JPEG data compression level.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**JpegQuality** [= Short]

Value

0 - Level1	Compression level 1	 <p>(Size given top priority)</p> <p>(Image quality given top priority)</p>
1 - Level2	Compression level 2	
2 - Level3	Compression level 3	
3 - Level4	Compression level 4	
4 - Level5	Compression level 5	
5 - Level6	Compression level 6	
6 - Level7	Compression level 7	

Default

3 - Level4 Compression level 4

Explanation

Specifies the JPEG data compression level.

This property is enabled when the ScanTo property is set to "0 - File," and the FileType property is set to "3 - JPEG," "4 - PDF" or "5 - Multipage PDF" and when the PixelType property is set to any value other than "0 - Black & White." In addition, it is also enabled when the ScanTo property is set to "2 - Raw Image Handle." Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ScanTo](#)

[FileType](#)

[PixelType](#)

[CompressionType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.117 LengthDetection

.... Simultaneous setting of paper end detection / background color / overscan

Feature

Sets paper end detection, background color, and overscan simultaneously.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.LengthDetection [= Short]

Value

0 - None	No setting
1 - LengthBlack	paper end detection
2 - LengthBlackOVS	paper end detection+overscan

Default

0 - None	No setting
----------	------------

Explanation

Sets paper end detection, background color, and overscan simultaneously.

When a value other than "0 - None" is set for this property, the background color will be black for a device that supports a black background and will be white for a device that does not support a black background.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[AutoProfile](#)

[BackgroundColor](#)

[Deskew](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[OverScan](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[UndefinedScanning](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.118 LongPage Long document (long page) scan setting

Feature

Sets the scanning of paper with a length greater than the maximum specifiable length (long page).

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **LongPage** [= Boolean]

Value

True Scans long documents (long page).
False Does not scan long documents (long page).

Default

False Does not scan long documents (long page).

Explanation

Enables the scanning of long paper (long page) that cannot be scanned with the setting for regular sizes (A4, A3, etc.).

This property is enabled only when "99 - Custom" is set for the PaperSize property, and the settings of the CustomPaperWidth property and the CustomPaperLength property will be referenced for the length and width of a long page.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)
[CustomPaperWidth](#)
[CustomPaperLength](#)
[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)
[PaperSize](#)
[PaperSupply](#)
[ScanTo](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Disregarded when any value other than "99 - Custom" is specified for the PaperSize property, "3 - ADF(Back Side)" (FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver only) is specified for the PaperSupply property.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

* Scannable length varies with device.

Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)."

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.119 Mirroring mirror image (flip horizontal)

Feature

Sets Flip Horizontal.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Mirroring** [= Boolean]

Value

True Uses Flip Horizontal.

False Does not use Flip Horizontal.

Default

False Does not use Flip Horizontal.

Explanation

Sets whether or not to use Flip Horizontal.

This property is enabled only when "0 - Black & White" is set for the PixelType property.

Because this property is not supported in devices without an image processing board, in such a case, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If "1 - Grayscale" or "2 - RGB" has been set for the PixelType property, a scan will be executed without regard to this property.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.120 MultiFeed multifeed detection

Feature

Detects multifeed (two or more sheets of document feed at one time).

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **MultiFeed** [= Short]

Value

0 - None	Disabled.
1 - Mode0	Device setting.
2 - Mode1	Detects difference in thickness/detects overlapping.
3 - Mode2	Detects difference in length.
4 - Mode3	Detects difference in length and thickness/detects overlapping and difference in length.

Default

0 - None	Disabled.
----------	-----------

Explanation

Detects multifeed (two or more sheets of document feed at one time). When any value other than disabled is specified for this property, if multifeed is detected the device will stop and the error message "Multifeed detected (Code: DS32006)" coming from the TWAIN driver will be displayed.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DivideLongPage](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[SilentMode](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

And because this property is not supported depending on devices, in such a case, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

Multiple documents that feed at the same time may be scanned as an image.

1.1.121 MultiFeedModeChangeSize

.... Specifying the paper length to disable multifeed detection

Feature

Specifies the paper length to disable multifeed detection.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**MultiFeedModeChangeSize** [= Single]

Value

Specifies the paper length to disable multifeed detection.

0 (Disabled), 1 inch (2.54cm) or longer

Default

0 Disabled

Explanation

Specifies the paper length to disable multifeed detection.

This property is enabled only when the MultiFeed property is set to a value other than " 0 - None" and "3- Mode2".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[MultiFeed](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.122 MultiFeedNotice Multifeed notification setting

Feature

Sets whether or not to use the multifeed notification function.

Coding Style

[form.]scancontrolname.**MultiFeedNotice** [=Boolean]

Value

True Uses the multifeed notification function.

False Does not use the multifeed notification function.

Default

False Does not use the multifeed notification function.

Explanation

Sets whether or not to use the multifeed notification function when scanning.

For FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver

To use this function, a value other than "0 - None" or "1 - Mode0" must be set for the MultiFeed property.

For PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver

To use this function, a value other than "0 - None" must be set for the MultiFeed property.

When "True" is set for this property, scanning does not stop even if multifeeds are detected.

The results are notified by using the MultiFeedResult property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[MultiFeed](#)

[MultiFeedResult](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.123 MultiFeedResult Getting the multifeed result

Feature

Gets the result of the multifeed notification function.

Coding Style

[form.]scancontrolName.**MultiFeedResult** [=Boolean]

Value

N/A. Property only for value reference purpose.

Default

False Multifeed was not detected.

Explanation

The multifeed result for the current page can be checked when a notification is sent for a ScanToFile, ScanToDibEx, or ScanToRawEx event.

FALSE Multifeed was not detected.

TRUE Multifeed was detected.

This property is enabled when [True] is set for the MultiFeedNotice property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[MultiFeed](#)

[MultiFeedNotice](#)

[ScanTo](#)

Related Events

[ScanToFile](#)

[ScanToDibEx](#)

[ScanToRawEx](#)

Value Setting

Not possible.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.124 MultiStreamDefaultValueMode

.... Mode for keeping the default value for each image

Feature

For properties that can be specified for each output image, this function enables the properties with a default value to be kept for each image.

Coding Style

[form.]scancontrolName.**MultiStreamDefaultValueMode** [=Short]

Value

0 - OFF Does not keep the default value for each output image
1 - ON Keeps the default value for each output image

Default

0 - OFF Does not keep the default value for each output image

Explanation

For properties that can be specified for each output image, specify whether to enable the properties with a default value to be kept for each image. This property is enabled when an option other than "0 - OFF" is set for the MultiStreamMode property.

This property works for the following properties:

AdjustRGB, AdjustRGBB, AdjustRGBG, AdjustRGBR, ADTCThreshold, AutoBright, Background, BackgroundSmoothing, BackgroundSmoothness, BackgroundThreshold, Brightness, CharacterExtraction, CharacterExtractionMethod, CharacterThickness, ColorReproduction, ColorReproductionBrightness, ColorReproductionContrast, ColorReproductionCustomGamma, ColorReproductionHighlight, ColorReproductionShadow, CompressionType, Contrast, CustomGamma, CustomResolution, DTCSensitivity, FadingCompensation, FileType, Filter, FilterSaturationSensitivity, Gamma, GammaFile, Halftone, HalftoneFile, Highlight, NoiseRejection, PatternRemoval, PixelType, Resolution, Reverse, SDTCSensitivity, SEE, Shadow, Sharpness, SimpleSlicePatternRemoval, sRGB, Threshold

Example: Specifying "2 - 3 Multilmage" for this property and "3 - 400×400 [dpi]" for the Resolution property before the StartScan method and specifying "0 - 200×200 [dpi]" for Resolution property in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event for the 2nd image

MultiStreamDefaultValueMode:OFF

	Before the StartScan method	1st image	2nd image	3rd image
Value specified for the Resolution property	3 - 400×400	Has not been specified	0 - 200×200	Has not been specified
Scanning outcome	-	400 dpi	200 dpi	200 dpi

MultiStreamDefaultValueMode:ON

	Before the StartScan method	1st image	2nd image	3rd image
Value specified for the Resolution property	3 - 400×400	Has not been specified	0 - 200×200	Has not been specified
Scanning outcome	-	300 dpi	200 dpi	300 dpi

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AdjustRGB](#)

[AdjustRGBB](#)

[AdjustRGBG](#)
[AdjustRGBR](#)
[ADCTThreshold](#)
[AutoBright](#)
[Background](#)
[BackgroundSmoothing](#)
[BackgroundSmoothness](#)
[BackgroundThreshold](#)
[Brightness](#)
[CharacterExtraction](#)
[CharacterExtractionMethod](#)
[CharacterThickness](#)
[ColorReproduction](#)
[ColorReproductionBrightness](#)
[ColorReproductionContrast](#)
[ColorReproductionCustomGamma](#)
[ColorReproductionHighlight](#)
[ColorReproductionShadow](#)
[CompressionType](#)
[Contrast](#)
[CustomGamma](#)
[CustomResolution](#)
[DTCSensitivity](#)
[FadingCompensation](#)
[FileType](#) "0 – BMP", "1 - TIFF", "2 - Multipage TIFF", "3 - JPEG", "4 - PDF", "5 - Multipage PDF"
[Filter](#)
[FilterSaturationSensitivity](#)
[Gamma](#)
[GammaFile](#)
[Halftone](#)
[HalftoneFile](#)
[Highlight](#)
[MultiStreamMode](#)
[NoiseRejection](#)
[PatternRemoval](#)
[PixelFormat](#) "0 - Black & White", "1 - Grayscale", "2 - RGB"
[Resolution](#)
[Reverse](#)
[SDTCSensitivity](#)
[SEE](#)
[Shadow](#)
[Sharpness](#)
[SimpleSlicePatternRemoval](#)
[sRGB](#)
[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

- This property does not support Java.

1.1.125 MultiStreamFileNameMode

.... File name and file counter settings for a file created from each output image

Feature

Sets a file name and file counter for a file created from each output image.

Coding Style

[form.]scancontrolName.**MultiStreamFileNameMode** [=Short]

Value

0 - OFF	Does not set a file name and file counter for a file created from each output image
1 - ON	Sets a file name and file counter for a file created from each output image

Default

0 - OFF	Does not set a file name and file counter for a file created from each output image
---------	---

Explanation

It is possible to set a file name and file counter for a file created from each output image. This property is enabled when an option other than "0 - OFF" is set for the MultiStreamMode property.

The FileCounter property and the FileName property are disabled when "1 - 2 Multimage" or "2 - 3 Multimage" is set for the MultiStreamMode property and "1 - ON" is set for this property. Use the FileCounter1, FileCounter2, and FileCounter3 properties and the FileName1, FileName2, and the FileName3 properties.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[FileCounter1](#), [FileCounter2](#), [FileCounter3](#)
[FileName1](#), [FileName2](#), [FileName3](#)
[MultiStreamMode](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

- This property does not support Java.

1.1.126 MultiStreamMode Settings for outputting multiple images

Feature

Outputs multiple images for each page that is scanned.

You can set properties for each image that is output.

Coding Style

[form.]scancontrolname.**MultiStreamMode** [=Short]

Value

0 - OFF	Not carried out
1 - 2 Multimage	Multi image output (two images)
2 - 3 Multimage	Multi image output (three images)

Default

0 - OFF	Not carried out
---------	-----------------

Explanation

Outputs multiple images for each page.

When "1 - 2 Multimage" is set, two images are output.

When "2 - 3 Multimage" is set, three images are output.

To specify a value other than "0 - OFF" for this property, be sure to specify "0 - File" for the ScanTo property.

When a value other than "0 - OFF" is specified, the MultiStreamPropertySetting event is issued for setting the property for each image.

The following properties can be set in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event.

AdjustRGB, AdjustRGBB, AdjustRGBG, AdjustRGBR, ADTCThreshold, AutoBright, Background, BackgroundSmoothing, BackgroundSmoothness, BackgroundThreshold, Brightness, CharacterExtraction, CharacterExtractionMethod, CharacterThickness, ColorReproduction, ColorReproductionBrightness, ColorReproductionContrast, ColorReproductionCustomGamma, ColorReproductionHighlight, ColorReproductionShadow, CompressionType, Contrast, CustomGamma, CustomResolution, DTCSensitivity, FadingCompensation, FileType, Filter, FilterSaturationSensitivity, Gamma, GammaFile, Halftone, HalftoneFile, Highlight, NoiseRejection, PatternRemoval, PixelType, Resolution, Reverse, SDTCSensitivity, SEE, Shadow, Sharpness, SimpleSlicePatternRemoval, sRGB, Threshold

Do not use any properties other than the properties above in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event. Configure such properties before the StartScan method. If such properties are configured in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event, the operation is not guaranteed.

To set a file name and file counter for a file created from each output image, set "1 - ON" for the MultiStreamFileNameMode property and use the FileName1, FileName2, and FileName3 properties and the FileCounter1, FileCounter2, and FileCounter3 properties.

If there is a property that is not set for a certain image, a value that is specified for a property for the previous image is applied instead. For the 1st image, a value that is specified for a property which is set before the StartScan method is applied.

Example: Specifying "2 - 3 Multimage" for this property and "3 - 400x400 [dpi]" for the Resolution property before the StartScan method and specifying "0 - 200x200 [dpi]" for Resolution property in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event for the 2nd image

	Before the StartScan method	1st image	2nd image	3rd image
Value specified for the Resolution property	3 - 400x400	Has not been specified	0 - 200x200	Has not been specified
Scanning outcome	-	400 dpi	200 dpi	200 dpi

The Resolution property is not set for the 1st image. So, the value that is specified for the property which is set before the StartScan method is applied instead and scanning will be performed at 400 dpi.

The Resolution property is not set for the 3rd image. So, the value that is specified for the property for 2nd image is applied to the 3rd image instead and scanning will be performed at 200 dpi.

If you want to set the default value for properties that are not set for a certain image, specify "1 – ON" for the MultiStreamDefaultValueMode property.

When a value other than "0 - OFF" is specified for this property

- When "1 - 2 Multimage" is specified, the maximum value that can be specified for the ScanCount property is 16,383. When "2 - 3 Multimage" is specified, the maximum value that can be specified for the ScanCount property is 10,922. Do not specify a value that exceeds the maximum value.
- The counter value for the DigitalEndorserString property increases every time an image is output.
- Specifying "True" for the ShowSourceUI property allows you to display the User Interface (UI) of the source, check the value specified in the SDK, and check the preview image, but does not allow you to perform a scan. Specify "False" for the ShowSourceUI property to perform a scan.
- When the values for the CompressionType property, the FileType property, and the PixelType property, which is specified for each image contradict each other when combined, the following operation will be taken.
 - When "0 - Black&White" is specified for the PixelType property and "3 - JPEG" is specified for the FileType property in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event, a scanned image is output as a TIFF file.
 - When "1 - Grayscale" or "2 - RGB" is specified for the PixelType property and the value for compression ("1 - CCITT G3(1D)", "2 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 2", "3 - CCITT G3(2D) Kfactor = 4", or "4 - CCITTG4") is specified for the CompressionType property in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event, the CompressionType property will be set to "0 - NoCompress" for the operation.
 - When "0 – Black&White" is specified for the PixelType property, "1 - TIFF" is specified for the FileType property, and "5 - JPEG" or "6 - Old JPEG" is specified for the CompressionType property, the CompressionType property will be set to "0 - NoCompress" for the operation.

Note: The operation when "0 – OFF" is specified for this property, refer to the Explanation for the CompressionType property, Filetype property, and PixelType property.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AdjustRGB](#)

[AdjustRGBB](#)

[AdjustRGBG](#)
[AdjustRGBR](#)
[ADTCThreshold](#)
[AutoBright](#)
[Background](#)
[BackgroundSmoothing](#)
[BackgroundSmoothness](#)
[BackgroundThreshold](#)
[Brightness](#)
[CharacterExtraction](#)
[CharacterExtractionMethod](#)
[CharacterThickness](#)
[ColorReproduction](#)
[ColorReproductionBrightness](#)
[ColorReproductionContrast](#)
[ColorReproductionCustomGamma](#)
[ColorReproductionHighlight](#)
[ColorReproductionShadow](#)
[CompressionType](#)
[Contrast](#)
[CustomGamma](#)
[CustomResolution](#)
[DTCSensitivity](#)
[FadingCompensation](#)
[FileCounter1, FileCounter2, FileCounter3](#)
[FileName1, FileName2, FileName3](#)
[FileType](#) “0 – BMP”, “1 - TIFF”, “2 - Multipage TIFF”, “3 - JPEG”, “4 - PDF” , “5 - Multipage PDF”
[Filter](#)
[FilterSaturationSensitivity](#)
[Gamma](#)
[GammaFile](#)
[Halftone](#)
[HalftoneFile](#)
[Highlight](#)
[MultiStreamDefaultValueMode](#)
[MultiStreamFileNameMode](#)
[NoiseRejection](#)
[PatternRemoval](#)
[PixelFormat](#) “0 - Black & White”, “1 - Grayscale”, “2 - RGB”
[Resolution](#)
[Reverse](#)
[ScanCount](#)
[ScanTo](#) “0 - File”
[SDTCSensitivity](#)
[SEE](#)
[Shadow](#)
[Sharpness](#)
[SimpleSlicePatternRemoval](#)
[sRGB](#)
[Threshold](#)

Related Events

[ScanToFile](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

- Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.
- If a value other than "0 - OFF" is specified for this property and a value other than "0 - File" is specified for the ScanTo property, an "EC_UNSUPPORTED_XFERMECH" error occurs. Be sure to specify "0 - File".
- If a value other than "0 - OFF" is specified for this property and "6 - Multi Image Output", or "7 - Auto Color Detection" is specified for the FileType property in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event, an "EC_ERROR_BAD_PARAMETER" error occurs. Be sure to specify "0 - BMP", "1 - TIFF", "2 - Multipage TIFF", "3 - JPEG", "4 - PDF" or "5 - Multipage PDF".
- If a value other than "0 - OFF" is specified for this property and a value (other than a value ranging from "0 - Black & White" to "2 - RGB") is specified for the PixelType property in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event, an "EC_ERROR_BAD_PARAMETER" error occurs. Be sure to specify a value ranging from "0 - Black & White" to "2 - RGB".

Compatibility and Restraints

- If the related properties are not enabled, a scan is performed without applying the values specified for those properties.
- This property does not support Java.

1.1.127 NoiseRejection Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary noise removal

Feature

Sets the sensitivity for Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary noise removal.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.NoiseRejection [= Short]

Value

0 - Disabled

1 to 20 - Higher values result in more noise removal.

Default

0 (Disabled)

Explanation

Sets the sensitivity for Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary noise removal.

This property is enabled only when "0 - Black & White" is specified for the PixelType property and "-2" is specified for the Threshold property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 0 and 20).

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.1.128 NoiseRemoval dust removal mode

Feature

Function to automatically remove tiny dots in images by regarding them as dust.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.NoiseRemoval [= Short]

Value

0 - None	Disabled.
1 - Matrix2	Removes dust of 2 x 2 dot matrix or smaller.
2 - Matrix3	Removes dust of 3 x 3 dot matrix or smaller.
3 - Matrix4	Removes dust of 4 x 4 dot matrix or smaller.
4 - Matrix5	Removes dust of 5 x 5 dot matrix or smaller.

Default

0 - None	Disabled.
----------	-----------

Explanation

Regards small black dots on the white area of an image or small white dots on the black area of an image as dust to automatically remove.

This property is enabled only when the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black & White" and "0" is specified for the Threshold property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Because this property is not supported in devices without an image processing board, in such a case, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.129 Orientation document orientation setting

Feature

Sets the orientation of a document.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Orientation** [= Short]

Value

0 - Portrait	Portrait
1 - Landscape	Landscape

Default

0 - Portrait	Portrait
--------------	----------

Explanation

Sets the orientation (portrait/landscape) of a document.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

"1 - Landscape" cannot be set depending on document size or scanner to use.

Example) PaperSize "0 - A3(297 x 420mm)"

In addition, there is the case that the image data which I read of is chipped off.

Example) fi-65F, PaperSize "11 - PostCard (100 x 149mm) ", "12 - Photo(89 x 127mm)"

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.130 Outline outline correction

Feature

Sets the outline correction function.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Outline** [= Short]

Value

When PixelType is binary (black and white):

0 - None	N/A
1 - Outline Emphasis Low	Low (Outline emphasis)
2 - Outline Emphasis Mid	Medium (Outline emphasis)
3 - Outline Emphasis High	High (Outline emphasis)
4 - Outline Smooth	Outline smoothing
5 - Edge Extract	Edge extraction

When PixelType is RGB color:

0 - None	N/A
1 - Outline Emphasis Low	Low (Outline emphasis)
2 - Outline Emphasis Mid	Medium (Outline emphasis)
3 - Outline Emphasis High	High (Outline emphasis)
5 - De-Screen Level 1	De-Screen level 1
6 - De-Screen Level 2	De-Screen level 2
7 - De-Screen Level 3	De-Screen level 3
8 - De-Screen Level 4	De-Screen level 4

When PixelType is Grayscale:

0 - None	N/A
----------	-----

Default

0 - None	N/A
----------	-----

Explanation

Sets the outline correction function by making a selection from the above list.

Outline emphasis: Outputs the scanned image with its outline emphasized.
Three levels (low/medium/high) are selectable.

Outline smoothing: Smoothes the jagged edges.

Edge extraction: Outputs the edges of an image.

De-Screen Level: Smoothes the inside of an image and carries out de-screening.
The higher the level, the smoother the image.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Value will not be

And if this property cannot be enabled due to the setting for the PixelType property, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning. And if this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning. (* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

This property depends on the

1. Before setting the PixelType property, set this property to "0 - None".

3. Set this property as necessary.

The value is not applied if it is set when designed.

When PixelType is Binary (black and white)

When PixelType is not Binary (black and white)

Property setting process to enable the value of this property for the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver.

AxFiScn1.Sharpness = 3

```
// Starting the process of scanning
```

→ Since the Outline value is set after the Sharpness, the Outline value is applied to the Sharpness, and then the function is work.

1.1.131 OverScan overscan setting

Feature

Sets overscan.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**OverScan** [= Short]

Value

0 - OFF	Perform overscan.
1 - ON	Do not perform overscan.

Default

0 - OFF	Perform overscan.
---------	-------------------

Explanation

Sets overscan.

Scans in a size slightly larger than that of actual document.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[AutoProfile](#)

[BackgroundColor](#)

[Deskew](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[LengthDetection](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[UndefinedScanning](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

And if this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.132 Overwrite file overwrite setting

Feature

Sets whether or not to overwrite files.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Overwrite** [= Short]

Value

0 - OFF(Mode0)	Does not overwrite (When file type is TIFF, JPEG or BMP without using "Image Processing Software Option ", processes the number of sheets specified for the ScanCount property up to the last sheet even if a file with the same name exists.)
1 - ON	Overwrites.
2 - Confirm(Mode0)	Displays the confirmation message box. (Displayed even in SilentMode.)
3 - OFF(Mode1)	Does not overwrite. (If a file with the same name exists, aborts scanning.)
4 - Confirm(Mode1)	Displays the confirmation message box. (Turned to the same operation as "3 - OFF(Mode1)" in SilentMode.)

Default

2 - Confirm(Mode0) Displays the confirmation message box.

Explanation

Sets whether or not to overwrite a file when saving, if a file with the same name exists.

- If a file with the same name exists when the property is set to "0 - OFF(Mode0)" or "3 - OFF(Mode1)", scanning will be aborted and the file will not be overwritten. (Data will be destroyed.)

- If a file with the same name exists when the property is set to "1 - ON," the file will be overwritten.

- If a file with the same name exists when the property is set to "2 - Confirm(Mode0)" or "4 - Confirm(Mode1)", the overwriting confirmation message box will appear. If you press the [Yes] button, the file will be overwritten. If you press the [No] button, scanning will be aborted and the file will not be overwritten. (Data will be destroyed.)

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ScanTo](#) "0 - File"

[SilentMode](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value not updated if set to other than the specified range.

Compatibility and Restraints

- Mode0 and Mode1 were introduced in V2.0L10. Mode1 is recommended. Mode0 is a compatible mode that enables applications developed using V1.0 to behave in the same way.

1.1.133 PageCount scan page count acquisition

Feature

Gets the scan page count.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PageCount** [= Short]

Value

N/A Property only for value reference purpose.

Default

0

Explanation

Gets the scan page count.

Initializes PageCount to 0 when calling StartScan to get the page count (number of pages) scanned.

Only one page (with one page image) is scanned when the PaperSupply property is specified with "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)", "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)", or "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)." One page (with two individual page images on it) is scanned when the property is specified with "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)."

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ScanTo](#)

Value Setting

Not possible.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.134 PageNumber Getting a page number

Feature

Gets the number of the page that is currently being scanned.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PageNumber** [= Short]

Value

N/A. Property only for value reference purpose.

Default

-1

Explanation

Gets the number of the page that is currently being scanned when a notification is sent for a ScanToFile, ScanToDibEx, or ScanToRawEx event.

Even when blank pages are skipped for the setting of the BlankPageSkip, SkipBlackPage, or SkipWhitePage properties, the page number accumulates. When the PaperSupply property is specified with "2 - ADF(Duplex)", it is possible to determine which side of a document it is, by looking at page numbers (that is, if it is an odd number, it is the front side, and if it is an even number, it is the back side).

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Events

[ScanToFile](#)

[ScanToDibEx](#)

[ScanToRawEx](#)

Value Setting

Not possible.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.135 PaperProtection Paper Protection

Feature

Detects document feeding errors.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PaperProtection** [= Short]

Value

0 - OFF	Disabled
1 - ON	Enabled
2 - Hardware Setting	Uses the scanner settings
3 - Driver Setting	Uses the driver settings

Default

3 - Driver Setting	Uses the driver settings
--------------------	--------------------------

Explanation

Detects document feeding errors. When any value other than disabled is specified for this property, if a feeding error is detected, the device will stop and the error message "Paper jammed in the ADF. (Code: DS32002)" coming from the TWAIN driver will be displayed.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Events

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.136 PaperSize document size

Feature

Sets the document size.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PaperSize** [= Short]

Value

0 - A3 (297 x 420mm)	
1 - A4 (210 x 297mm)	
2 - A5 (148 x 210mm)	
3 - A6 (105 x 148mm)	
4 - B4(JIS) (257 x 364mm)	
5 - B5(JIS) (182 x 257mm)	
6 - B6(JIS) (128 x 182mm)	
7 - Letter (8.5 x 11 inch)	(= 216 x 279mm)
8 - Legal (8.5 x 14 inch)	(= 216 x 356mm)
9 - Executive (7.25 x 10.5 inch)	(= 184 x 267mm)
10 - Double Letter (11 x 17 inch)	(= 279 x 432mm)
11 - PostCard (100 x 149mm)	Postcard size
12 - Photo (89 x 127mm)	4 x 6 inch photo size
13 - Card (55 x 91mm)	Business card size
15 - C4 (229 x 324mm)	
16 - C5 (162 x 229mm)	
17 - C6 (114 x 162mm)	
18 - B4(ISO) (250 x 353mm)	
19 - B5(ISO) (176 x 250mm)	
20 - B6(ISO) (125 x 176mm)	
21 - 8.5 x 17 inch	
22 - 8.5 x 34 inch	
23 - 8.5 x 106.3 inch	
24 - 8.5 x 125 inch	
25 - 8.5 x 160 inch	
26 - 8.5 x 215 inch	
27 - 8.5 x 220 inch	
28 - 11.7 x 17 inch	
29 - 11.7 x 34 inch	
30 - 12 x 17 inch	
31 - 12 x 34 inch	
32 - 12 x 125 inch	
33 - Maximum Size	
34 - 12 x 106.3inch	
35 - 12 x 160inch	
36 - 12 x 215inch	
37 - 12 x 220inch	
99 - Custom	

Default

1 - A4 (210 x 297mm)

Explanation

Sets the document size to scan by making a selection from the above list.

When the value is set to "33 - Maximum Size", the document size is set to the device's maximum document size for non-long pages.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[CustomPaperWidth](#)

[CustomPaperLength](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[LongPage](#)

[Orientation](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Also when the settings of "11-PostCard", "12-Photo" and "13-Card" are not supported, sets "99 - Custom" when scanning to carry out a scan.

And because some values are not supported depending on devices, in such a case, a scan will be carried out by setting this property as "1 - A4 (210 x 297mm)" when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

Only TWAIN compliant document sizes are supported.

The document orientation specified for business cards was changed from portrait to landscape in V2.0L10.

When Custom is selected, even if you can enter a standard paper size (e.g. 55x91mm), the user interface of the source may display the paper size as Custom with a standard paper size.

1.1.137 PaperSupply paper feed method

Feature

Sets the paper feed method.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PaperSupply** [= Short]

Value

0 - Flatbed	Flatbed
1 - ADF	ADF(Face scan)
2 - ADF(Duplex)	ADF(Duplex scan)
3 - ADF(BackSide)	ADF(Back scan)
4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)	A3 double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)	Double-letter double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)	B4 double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)	Separate outputs of front and back side images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)	A3 double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
11 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)	Double-letter double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
12 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)	B4 double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
13 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread Auto)	Automatic detection double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
14 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping All)	Carrier Sheet Size Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
15 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping A4)	A4 Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
16 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping A5)	A5 Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
17 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping A6)	A6 Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
18 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping POST)	POST Card Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
19 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping B5)	B5 Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
20 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping B6)	B6 Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
21 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping LT)	Letter Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
22 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping CARD_T)	Card Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
23 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping CARD_Y)	Card landscape Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
24 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_ET)	Photo E portrait Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
25 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_EY)	Photo E landscape Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
26 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_LT)	Photo L portrait Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
27 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_LY)	Photo L landscape Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet

28 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_LL)	Photo LL portrait Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
29 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_LLY)	Photo LL landscape Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
30 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Auto)	Automatic detection Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
31 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Custom)	Custom Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
32 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex All)	Carrier Sheet Size Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
33 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex A4)	A4 Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
34 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex A5)	A5 Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
35 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex A6)	A6 Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
36 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex POST)	POST Card Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
37 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex B5)	B5 Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
38 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex B6)	B6 Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
39 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex LT)	Letter Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
40 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex CARD_T)	Card Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
41 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex CARD_Y)	Card landscape Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
42 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_ET)	Photo E portrait Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
43 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_EY)	Photo E landscape Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
44 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_LT)	Photo L portrait Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
45 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_LY)	Photo L landscape Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
46 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_LL)	Photo LL portrait Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
47 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_LLY)	Photo LL landscape Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
48 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Auto)	Automatic detection Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)	Custom Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet

Default

1 - ADF ADF (Face scan)

Explanation

Selects the paper feed method for scanning.

Flatbed: Fixes the document on the document table to scan one at

a time.

ADF (Auto Document Feeder): Places multiple documents on the ADF, feeds them one by one to carry out a continuous scan. This makes it possible to scan only one side (face or back) and simultaneously scan both sides according to the setting.

CarrierSheet: Load a single document inserted inside the Carrier Sheet onto the ADF and scan it in duplex scan mode. Only one page (two facing spread pages combined as one entire image, or two different pages on one image) is scanned. Depending on the detection error around the folded part of the document, some part of the image may be lacked. In such case, place the document about 1mm inside from the edge of the Carrier Sheet. Note this is not recommended for scanning that requires image accuracy.

When "2 - ADF (Duplex)" (ADF duplex scan) is specified, if the ScanCount property is set to 1 (1-page scan), only the face of a document will be scanned. Specify "2 - RGB" for the PixelType property for scanning when "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)", "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)", "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)", or "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" is specified. To set "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" - "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)" for this property, be sure to set "0 - File" or "1 - Dib Handle" for the ScanTo property.

Note: Settings of other properties may not be effective (i.e., settings are ignored) depending on the value specified for this property. Refer to ["3.2 Relationships Between Properties"](#) and ["3.3 Property Priority Order."](#)

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)
[DivideLongPage](#)
[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)
[IsExistsFB](#)
[PageCount](#)
[PaperSize](#)
[ScanCount](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If some devices do not support "0 - Flatbed," "1 - ADF" will be set when scanning to carry out a scan.

If "2 - ADF (Duplex)," is not supported depending on devices, "1 - ADF" will be set when scanning to carry out a scan.

And if "3 - ADF (BackSide)," is not supported depending on devices, "1 - ADF" will be set when scanning to carry out a scan.

If an error occurs in the middle of ADF scanning, some devices may go to the scanning of a next page.

Depending on the scanner you are using, the scanning operation is NOT guaranteed if parameters "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" - "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)" are not supported.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

If the "ShowSourceUI" property is set to "True", and this property is set from "24 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_ET)" to "29 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_LLY)" or "42 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_ET)" to "47 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_LLY)" on a non-Japanese operating system, "Letter" is shown for the paper size of the source user interface.

* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)".

1.1.138 ParentAppName specifying the parent application name

Feature

This property ceased to be supported after V1.0L22.

Compatibility and Restraints

This property is provided for compatibility.

Provided as a compatible for recompiling the source program created by a version of SDK older than V1.0L22 as is using an SDK version V1.0L22 or later. Note that compiling may become impossible in the future, should a major update of the version be conducted. Do not use this property when newly developing applications.

1.1.139 PatchCodeDetection Patch code detection

Feature

Sets patch code detection.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PatchCodeDetection** [= Boolean]

Value

True Patch code detection is performed.

False Patch code detection is not performed.

Default

False Patch code detection is not performed.

Explanation

Sets patch code detection.

If "True" is set for the patch code detection property, the [DetectPatchCode](#) event is issued when a patch code is detected.

Refer to the [DetectPatchCode](#) event.

For detection conditions on patch codes, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DivideLongPage](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property is disabled due to the device type, set this property to "False" during scanning execution to perform the scan. (* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.1.140 PatchCodeDirection Patch code detection direction setting

Feature

Sets the direction of the patch code that is detected.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PatchCodeDirection** [= Short]

Value

0 - Horizontal	Horizontal direction
1 - Vertical	Vertical direction
2 - Horizontal & Vertical	Horizontal and vertical directions

Default

1 - Vertical	Vertical direction
--------------	--------------------

Explanation

Sets the direction of the patch code that is detected.

This property is enabled only when the PatchCodeDetection property is set to "True".

For detection conditions on patch codes, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[PatchCodeDetection](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

If "1 - PatchCode" is set for the JobControlMode property, the value of this property is set for the patch code detection direction of PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver UI job control.

1.1.141 PatchCodeType Patch code type setting

Feature

Sets the type of patch code that is detected.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PatchCodeType** [= Integer]

Value

Sets the type of patch code that is detected.

- 1 - Patch 1
- 2 - Patch 2
- 4 - Patch 3
- 8 - Patch 4
- 32 - Patch 6
- 256 - Patch T

Default

303 All types

Explanation

Sets the type of patch code that is detected.

This property is enabled only when the PatchCodeDetection property is set to "True".

If detection of multiple patch codes is set, set the total setting value of the types.

Example:

To detect "1 - Patch 1" and "2 - Patch 2", set "3".

For detection conditions on patch codes, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[PatchCodeDetection](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

If "1 - PatchCode" is set for the JobControlMode property, the value of this property is set for the patch code type of PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver UI job control.

1.1.142 PatternRemoval

.... Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary pattern removal setting

Feature

Sets the removal of the Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary pattern.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PatternRemoval** [= Short]

Value

0 - OFF	Pattern is not removed.
1 - Standard	Pattern is removed (standard).
2 - Advanced	Pattern is removed (advanced).
3 - Strong	Pattern is removed (Strong).

Default

1 - Standard	Pattern is removed (standard).
--------------	--------------------------------

Explanation

Sets whether the Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary pattern is removed.

This property is enabled only when "0 - Black & White" is specified for the PixelType property and "-2" is specified for the Threshold property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.1.143 PixelType pixel type

Feature

Sets the pixel type.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PixelType** [= Short]

Value

0 - Black & White	Binary (Black and White)
1 - Grayscale	Grayscale
2 - RGB	RGB color
3 - Automatic	Auto color detection
4 - SwitchByCodeSheet	Switching by code sheets

Default

0 - Black & White	Binary (Black and White)
-------------------	--------------------------

Explanation

Sets the scan pixel type.

To scan by setting Grayscale for the PixelType property:

- When the data is output to file (ScanTo property is set to "0- File"), or when data is passed via memory (ScanTo property is set to "2 - RawImageHandle")
 - Set the FileType property as "0 - BMP" or "3 - JPEG"
 - Set "1 - TIF," "2 - Multipage TIFF," "4 - PDF" or "5 - Multipage PDF" for the FileType property and then set "0 - No Compress" for the CompressionType property.
- Pass by DIB handle (if "1 - Dib Handle" is set for the ScanTo property)
 - There is no property in particular to set.

Note that at the time of output to file or pass by memory, this property may be forcibly set to "0 - Black & White."

(If the CompressionType property is set to "1 - CCITT G3(1D)," "2 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 2," "3 - CCITT G3(2D) Kfactor = 4" or "4 - CCITT G4," that setting is given higher priority and a scan will be carried out by setting this property as "0 - Black & White.")

Also, the setting for this property cannot be enabled depending on the setting for the Outline property.

- If the Outline property is set to "0-3" or "5," PixelType=binary(black and white) and PixelType=RGB are enabled. If not enabled, the value will not be updated.
- When the Outline property is set to "4," and when PixelType=binary(black and white) is enabled, if this property cannot be enabled, the value will not be updated.
- When the Outline property is set to "6-8," and when PixelType=RGB is enabled, if this property cannot be enabled, the value will not be updated.
- When the Outline property is set to 0, PixelType = RGB/Black & White Automatic Detection is enabled. The value is not updated if this property is disabled.

Therefore, if you want to change the status when the Outline property is set to "4" and PixelType=binary (black and white) to the status of PixelType=RGB, set the Outline parameter as "0" once, then change the PixelType to RGB.

If this property is set to "4 - SwitchByCodeSheet", the scan settings are changed everytime a patch code is detected.

For details on the items to be set, refer to the driver help.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[CompressionType](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FileType](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[JobControl](#)

[JpegQuality](#)

[Outline](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[PatchCodeDetection](#)

[ScanMode](#)

[ScanTo](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

In V1.0, at the time of pass by memory (when "2 - Raw Image Handle" is set for the ScanTo property), "0 - No Compress" is set for the CompressionType property, while in V2.0L10 or later, the above setting does not need to be made.

This property depends on the value specified as the Outline property. To specify this property, set the Outline property to "0 - None" in advance.

If this property is set to "3 - Automatic" or "4 - SwitchByCodeSheet", the CompressionType property and FileType property may not always be the expected value.

1.1.144 PreFiltering ballpoint pen filtering

Feature

Sets the ballpoint pen filtering mode.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PreFiltering** [= Boolean]

Value

True Enables the ball point pen filtering mode.
False Disables the ball point pen filtering mode.

Default

False Disables the ball point pen filtering mode.

Explanation

When scanning documents written with a ballpoint pen, because the reflected light of ballpoint pen ink is not homogeneous, part of a letter may drop out. If this setting is enabled, filtering will be carried out to correct broken and thin lines.

This property is enabled only when the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black & White" and "0" is specified for the Threshold property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Because this property is not supported in devices without an image processing board, in such a case, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.145 PunchHoleRemoval Punch hole removal

Feature

Sets removal of punch holes.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PunchHoleRemoval** [= Short]

Value

0 - Do not remove	Punch holes are not removed.
1 - White	Punch holes are filled with white.
2 - Background color	Punch holes are filled with the background color.

Default

0 - Do not remove

Explanation

Sets removal of punch holes.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[BackgroundColor](#)

[OverScan](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[UndefinedScanning](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.1.146 PunchHoleRemovalMode Punch hole removal mode

Feature

Sets the type of punch holes to be removed.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**PunchHoleRemovalMode** [= Short]

Value

0 - Standard	Standard holes
1 - Advanced	Holes larger than standard holes

Default

0 - Standard	Standard holes
--------------	----------------

Explanation

Sets the type of punch holes to be removed.

This property is enabled only when the PunchHoleRemoval property is set to "1 - White" or "2 - Background color".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PunchHoleRemoval](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.1.147 RegionLeft Left Edge of the Scanning Area

Feature

Configures the left edge of the scanning area.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**RegionLeft** [= Single]

Value

The left edge of the scanning area.

Default

0

Explanation

Specify the left edge of the scanning area.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[CustomPaperWidth](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[RegionTop](#)

[RegionWidth](#)

[RegionLength](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

When a negative value is specified for the RegionLeft, RegionTop, RegionWidth, and RegionLength properties, these four properties are set to "0" and the whole document is scanned.

Also, the scanning area specified by the RegionLeft property does not fit into the document size (area) specified by either the PaperSize property or the CustomPaperWidth property, this property is set to "0" at scanning.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.148 RegionLength Length of the Scanning Area

Feature

Configures the length of the scanning area.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**RegionLength** [= Single]

Value

The length of the scanning area.

Default

0

Explanation

Specify the length of the scanning area.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[CustomPaperWidth](#)

[CustomPaperLength](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[RegionLeft](#)

[RegionTop](#)

[RegionWidth](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

When the RegionWidth and RegionLength properties are set to "0," the scan is performed on the document size specified by the PaperSize, CustomPaperWidth, and CustomPaperLength properties.

When a negative value is specified for the RegionLeft, RegionTop, RegionWidth, and RegionLength properties, these four properties are set to "0" and the whole document is scanned.

If the length of the scanning area is set to less than one inch, the length is rounded up to one inch at scanning.

With the FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver is used, if the length of the scanning area is set to less than one inch (26 mm), the length is rounded up to one inch (26 mm) at scanning.

With the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver is used, if the length of the scanning area is set to less than one inch (25.4 mm), the length is rounded up to one inch (25.4 mm) at scanning.

Also, the scanning area specified by the RegionLength property does not fit into the document size specified by either the PaperSize property or the CustomPaperLength

property, this property is adjusted to fit into the document size (area) at scanning.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.149 RegionTop Top Edge of the Scanning Area

Feature

Configures the top edge of the scanning area.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**RegionTop** [= Single]

Value

The top edge of the scanning area.

Default

0

Explanation

Specify the top edge of the scanning area.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[CustomPaperLength](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[RegionLeft](#)

[RegionWidth](#)

[RegionLength](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

When a negative value is specified for the RegionLeft, RegionTop, RegionWidth, and RegionLength properties, these four properties are set to "0" and the whole document is scanned.

Also, the top edge of the scanning area specified by the RegionTop property does not fit into the document size (area) specified by either the PaperSize property or the CustomPaperLength property, this property is set to "0" at scanning.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.150 RegionWidth Width of the Scanning Area

Feature

Configures the width of the scanning area.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**RegionWidth** [= Single]

Value

The width of the scanning area.

Default

0

Explanation

Specify the width (horizontal direction) of the scanning area.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[CustomPaperWidth](#)

[CustomPaperLength](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[PaperSize](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[RegionLeft](#)

[RegionTop](#)

[RegionLength](#)

[Unit](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

No error check is done at the time of setting.

When the RegionWidth and RegionLength properties are set to "0," the scan is performed on the document size specified by the PaperSize, CustomPaperWidth, and CustomPaperLength properties.

When a negative value is specified for the RegionLeft, RegionTop, RegionWidth, and RegionLength properties, these four properties are set to "0" and the whole document is scanned.

With the FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver is used, if the width of the scanning area is set to less than one inch (26 mm), the width is rounded up to one inch (26 mm) at scanning.

With the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver is used, if the width of the scanning area is set to less than one inch (25.4 mm), the width is rounded up to one inch (25.4 mm) at scanning.

Also, the scanning area specified by the RegionWidth property does not fit into the document size specified by either the PaperSize property or the CustomPaperWidth property, this property is adjusted to fit into the document size (area) at scanning.

Compatibility and Restraints
N/A

1.1.151 Report Report Output

Feature

Configures the output method of the scan result.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Report** [= Short]

Value

0 - OFF	No reporting of the result
1 - Display	Output the result on the screen (dialog box display)
2 - File	Output the result to a file
3 - Display+File	Output the result to the screen and a file

Default

0 - OFF	No reporting of the result
---------	----------------------------

Explanation

Specify the output method of the scan result.

Duration from when the scan start button is pressed till the completion of the scan in ppm/ipm units, and scan attributes (resolution, document size, image type, etc.) are output. The output is produced after the driver is closed. If another scan is performed without closing the driver screen, the result is output immediately before closing the driver.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[MultiStreamMode](#)

[ReportFile](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

The value is not updated when any value outside the range is specified.

The result is not output when the number of scanned pages is 0 (no scanning has been performed) or an error occurred during the scan.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.152 ReportFile Report File Name

Feature

Configures the file name for the scan result.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ReportFile** [= String]

Value

The file name for storing the scan result (a character string which includes the absolute path and terminates with a null).

Default

"" (empty character string)

Explanation

Specify a file name when outputting the scan result into a file.

This property is valid only when the Report property is set to "2 - File" or "3 - Display+File."

Duration from when the scan start button is pressed till the completion of the scan in ppm/ipm units, and scan attributes (resolution, document size, image type, etc.) are output. The output is produced after the driver is closed. If another scan is performed without closing the driver screen, the result is output immediately before closing the driver.

Note: Specification of this property is enabled or disabled (ignored) depending on the setting values of other properties. Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[Report](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

This property is ignored at scanning if the Report property is set to anything other than "2 - File" or "3 - Display+File."

The file name is checked at the execution. The process terminates without writing the result to the file if the file name is invalid or a write error occurred.

A file without the scan result may be created when the disk space is insufficient.

The operation is not guaranteed if a relative path is specified. The file may be created in an unintended location.

Also, the result is not output when the number of scanned pages is 0 (no scanning has been performed) or an error occurred during the scan.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.153 Resolution Standard Resolution

Feature

Specifies the scan resolution.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Resolution** [= Short]

Value

0 - 200x200 [dpi]
1 - 240x240 [dpi]
2 - 300x300 [dpi]
3 - 400x400 [dpi]
4 - 500x500 [dpi]
5 - 600x600 [dpi]
6 - 700x700 [dpi]
7 - 800x800 [dpi]
9 - 1200x1200 [dpi]
99 - Custom

Default

2 - 300x300 [dpi]

Explanation

Select and configure the resolution for scanning from the above settable values.

Scanning may not be possible in relation to the document size even if the resolution is supported by the device.

Example) "7 - 800 x 800" is specified on the document size A3 for a scan.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[CustomResolution](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[PaperSize](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If the specified resolution is not supported by the device, the default value is applied at scanning.

Note: Supported resolutions vary by devices.

Refer to "Operator Guide" included in your device.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

The default has been changed to 2 instead of 3 since V2.0L10.

1.1.154 Reverse Black and White Inversion / Color Inversion

Feature

Configures whether to invert black and white or invert color.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Reverse** [= Boolean]

Value

True Apply the black and white inversion / color inversion process

False Do not apply the black and white inversion / color inversion process

Default

False Do not apply the black and white inversion / color inversion process

Explanation

Specify whether to apply the black and white inversion / color inversion process.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

This property may not be valid in relation to the PixelType property depending on devices. In such cases, the PixelType property takes precedence and the scan process is performed with the default value of the Reverse property.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.155 Rotation Rotation Angle

Feature

Configures the rotation angle of the scanned image.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Rotation** [= Short]

Value

0 - None	No rotation
1 - R90	Rotate 90 degrees to the right
2 - R180	Rotate 180 degrees to the right
3 - R270	Rotate 270 degrees to the right
4 - Automatic	Automatic

Default

0 - None	No rotation
----------	-------------

Explanation

Rotate the scanned image by the specified degree and output the image.

Specify the degree to rotate the scanned image.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[ScanTo](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.156 ScanContinue Setting Continuous Scanning

Feature

Sets continuous scanning.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ScanContinue** [= Boolean]

Value

True	Continue scanning
False	Do not continue scanning

Default

False	Do not continue scanning
-------	--------------------------

Explanation

Specify whether to finish scanning, or to load another document and continue scanning after the document that is currently loaded on the scanner is scanned.

To set the continuous scanning method, use the ScanContinueMode property.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DivideLongPage](#)

[ScanContinueMode](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

None

Compatibility and Restraints

None

1.1.157 ScanContinueMode Setting Continuous Scanning Method

Feature

Sets the continuous scanning method.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ScanContinueMode** [= Short]

Value

0 - Manual	Manual
1 - Automatic	Automatic

Default

0 - Manual	Manual
------------	--------

Explanation

Sets the continuous scanning method.

This property is enabled only when the ScanContinue property is set to "True".

If "0 - Manual" is specified, the scanner enters a standby state with the preview window displayed after the loaded documents are scanned. To continue scanning, load the additional documents and click the [Scan] button. To end a scan, click the [Finish] button.

Specifying "1 - Automatic" is useful for scanning with the ADF. The scanner enters a standby state with the preview window displayed after the loaded documents are scanned. To continue scanning, load the additional documents. Scanning starts automatically. To end a scan, click the [Finish] button. When you scan a document with the flatbed, the scanner operation is the same as in the case where "0 - Manual" is specified.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ScanContinue](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

None

1.1.158 ScanCount Number of Pages to be Scanned

Feature

Configures the number of pages to scan.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ScanCount** [= Short]

Value

-1 or any value between 1 and 32767 (number of pages)

All pages on the ADF are scanned if "-1" is specified.

("0" is not valid)

Default

"-1" (all pages on the ADF)

Explanation

Specify the number of pages to be scanned in once when performing a continuous scan from the ADF.

This property is valid only when the PaperSupply property is set to "1 - ADF," "2 - ADF (Duplex)," or "3 - ADF (BackSide)."

The scan is performed only once if "0 - Flatbed" is specified.

Also, if "2 - ADF (Duplex)" is specified whilst this property is set to "1," only the front side of the page is scanned. Specify "2" to this property (total of the front and reverse sides is 2 pages) when both sides of the document should be scanned.

When "6 - Multi Image Output" is specified for the FileType property, the maximum value that can be specified for this property is 16,383. Do not specify a value that exceeds the maximum value.

Note: Specification of this property is enabled or disabled (ignored) depending on the setting values of other properties. Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[FileType](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

When the number of pages loaded on the ADF is fewer than the number specified in this property, RC_FAILURE is returned after scanning all pages from the ADF. At this time, the ErrorCode property is set with a value "EC_NOT_ENOUGH_PAPER." Reload the document and call the StartScan method to continue scanning.

Compatibility and Restraints

When the number of pages loaded on the ADF is more than the number specified in this property, the last page specified in ScanCount property is not completely ejected by the device.

If Cache mode of the FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver is set to a value other than "None", documents exceeding the quantity specified by this property may be fed.

1.1.159 ScanMode Scan mode

Feature

Sets the scan mode.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ScanMode** [= Short]

Value

0 - Normal Scan	A normal scan is performed.
1 - Assist Scan	An assist scan is performed.

Default

0 - Normal Scan	A normal scan is performed.
-----------------	-----------------------------

Explanation

Sets the scan mode.

If "1 - Assist Scan" is set for this property, after scanning, the Assist Scan window of the source is displayed.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[MultiStreamMode](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.1.160 ScanTo Output Method of Scanned Data

Feature

Configures the output method of scanned data.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ScanTo** [= Short]

Value

One of the following methods to output scanned data.

- | | |
|----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 0 - File | File |
| 1 - Dib Handle | DIB handle (Unsupported in Java) |
| 2 - Raw Image Handle | Memory (Unsupported in Java) |

Default

- | | |
|----------|------|
| 0 - File | File |
|----------|------|

Explanation

Specify the output method of data scanned by an image scanner.

- Data is output as a file when "0 - File" is specified.

Specify the FileName property and FileType property.

- A ScanToDibEx event is issued and the DIB handle is passed when "1 - Dib Handle" is specified.

For details, refer to the [ScanToDibEx](#) event.

- A ScanToRaw event is issued and the memory handle is passed when "2 - Raw Image Handle" is specified. For details, refer to the [ScanToRawEx](#) event.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[MultiStreamMode](#)

When "0 - File" is specified.

[FileName](#)

[FileType](#)

When "2 - Raw Image Handle " is specified.

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

- For Java, only the value "0 - File" is available.

- Point to note when "2 - Raw Image Handle" is specified

"TWAIN driver" is a driver that conforms to the TWAIN standards, and generates image data aligned on 4-byte boundaries. The SDK passes image data generated by the "TWAIN driver" to the application as it is. When the application handles the image data, make sure that the image data is aligned on 4-byte boundaries.

1.1.161 SDTCSensitivity Automatic (simple) binary dispersion value

Feature

Sets the automatic (simple) binary dispersion value.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**SDTCSensitivity** [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from 1 (low) to 3 (high)

Default

2

Explanation

Sets the automatic (simple) binary dispersion value.

This property is enabled only when the Threshold property is set to "0".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between 1 and 3).

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.1.162 SEE Selectable Edge Enhancement

Feature

Configures whether to apply selectable edge enhancement.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**SEE** [= Short]

Value

0 - OFF	Do not apply selectable edge enhancement
1 - ON	Apply selectable edge enhancement

Default

0 - OFF	Do not apply selectable edge enhancement
---------	--

Explanation

Specify the selectable edge enhancement processing (SEE: Selectable Edge Enhancement).

Line drawings (characters) and photo images are scanned at half tone and the edge enhancement process is applied on the line drawing sections.

This process is suitable to emphasize characters in a document containing characters and photos.

This property is valid only when the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black & White", the AutoSeparation property is set to "0 - OFF" and the Halftone property is set to any value other than "0 - None".

Note: Specification of this property is enabled or disabled (ignored) depending on the setting values of other properties. Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoSeparation](#)

[CompressionType](#)

[Halftone](#)

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

This property is ignored at scanning if the PixelType property is set to "1 - Grayscale" or "2 - RGB" or the AutoSeparation property is set to "1 - ON."

If the Halftone property is set to "0 - None," change it to "1 - Dither Pattern 0" (for dark images).

On the scanner that does not support this property, if it is set to "1 - ON," the Halftone effect may be produced on the scanned image.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.163 SelectOutputSize Selecting output size

Feature

Select the method for specifying the output size used for automatic cropping.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**SelectOutputSize** [= Short]

Value

0 - Margin	Margin
1 - ScanningArea	Scanning area

Default

0 - Margin	Margin
------------	--------

Explanation

Select the method for specifying the output size used for automatic cropping.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[AutoProfile](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Some setting values are not supported depending on the specific device.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)".)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.164 Shadow shadow

Feature

Sets shadows.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Shadow** [= Short]

Value

Between 0 and 254.

Default

10

Explanation

Specify shadowing for images when scanning.

This property is enabled only when either "1 - Grayscale" or "2 - RGB" is set for the PixelType property.

It is not possible to set a value higher than that specified as the Highlight property.

This property is invalid when the PaperSupply property is set as "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)", "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)", "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)", or "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)".

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBright](#)

[Gamma](#)

[Highlight](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if the specified value exceeds the available range (0 to 254) or the value set for the Highlight property.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

The applicable value range for this property depends on the current Highlight property value. Therefore, the Highlight property must be set first.

1.1.165 Sharpness Sharpness

Feature

Feature 6
Sets the sharpness.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Sharpness** [= Short]

Value

When PixelType is Simple slice binary (black and white)

0 - None	N/A
1 - Emphasis Low	Low (Emphasis)
2 - Emphasis Mid	Medium (Emphasis)
3 - Emphasis High	High (Emphasis)
4 - Edge Extract	Edge extraction
5 - Smoothing Level 1	Smoothing level 1
6 - Smoothing Level 2	Smoothing level 2
7 - Smoothing Level 3	Smoothing level 3
8 - Smoothing Level 4	Smoothing level 4

When PixelType is Grayscale/RGB

0 - None	N/A
1 - Emphasis Low	Low (Emphasis)
2 - Emphasis Mid	Medium (Emphasis)
3 - Emphasis High	High (Emphasis)
5 - De-Screen Level 1	De-Screen level 1
6 - De-Screen Level 2	De-Screen level 2
7 - De-Screen Level 3	De-Screen level 3
8 - De-Screen Level 4	De-Screen level 4

Default

0 - None	N/A
----------	-----

Explanation

Sharpness
Sets the sharpness of images when scanning.

Emphasis:	Outputs the scanned image with its outline emphasized. Three levels (low/medium/high) are selectable.
Smoothing:	Smoothes the jagged edges.
Edge extraction:	Outputs the edges of an image.
De-Screen Level:	Smoothes the inside of an image and carries out de-screening. The higher the level, the smoother the image.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

StartScan

Related Properties

PaperSupply

PixelType

Threshold

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.1.166 ShowSourceUI Source User Interface (UI) Display

Feature

Configures whether to display the source user interface (UI).

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ShowSourceUI** [= Boolean]

Value

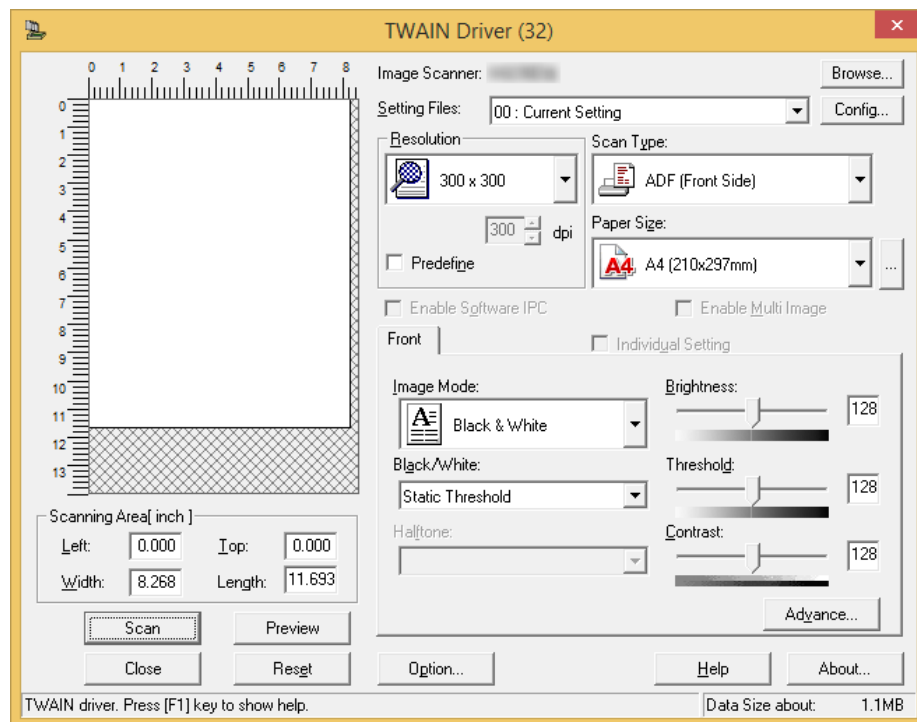
True Display the source user interface
False Do not display the source user interface

Default

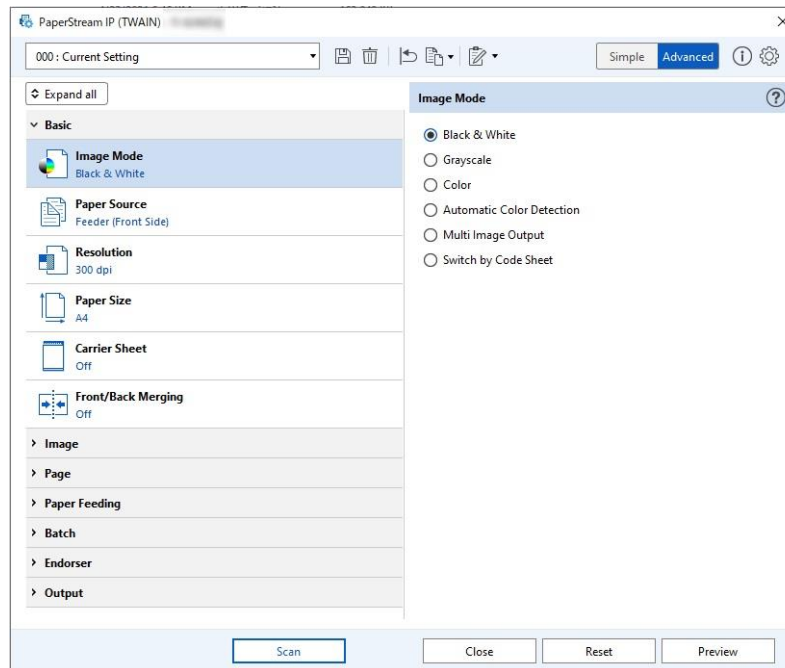
True Display the source user interface

Explanation

Specify whether to display the source user interface (UI) at scanning.
This should be set to "False" when performing an automatic scanning process.



Example of a FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver user interface display



Example of a PaperStream IP(TWAIN) driver user interface display

If the source user interface (UI) is closed using either the close box or the [Close] button without scanning, the StartScan method reports RC_SUCCESS in the return value.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.167 SilentMode Silent Mode

Feature

Configures whether to execute the source in silent mode.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**SilentMode** [= Boolean]

Value

True	Silent mode
False	Normal mode

Default

False	Normal mode
-------	-------------

Explanation

Specify whether to execute the source in silent mode (the mode without any notifications such as error messages).

No error messages are output if "True" is specified.

Error messages are output as of normal mode if "False" is specified.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ErrorCode](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Error message display should be handled by applications. Refer to the ErrorCode property about details on errors.

Compatibility and Restraints

Errors at opening the source may be output even if this property is set to "True."

Example) "Please wait for the scanner lamp to warm up."

"A general fault of the MSG_OPENDS response. (Internally) There has been a sharing violation. Twain source may be in use. (Code: DS50171)"

"Communication failed."

Make sure that the power is on, the cable is firmly connected, and the scanner is not used by another application.

Note that some scanners may turn off automatically. In case the scanner is turned off, turn the power back on and then try again.(Code: DS42019)"

1.1.168 SimpleSlicePatternRemoval Simple slice binary pattern removal setting

Feature

Sets the removal of the simple slice binary pattern.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**SimpleSlicePatternRemoval** [= Boolean]

Value

True	Pattern is removed.
False	Pattern is not removed.

Default

False	Pattern is not removed.
-------	-------------------------

Explanation

Sets whether the simple slice binary pattern is removed.

This property is enabled when "0 - Normal Scan" is specified for the ScanMode property, "0 - Black & White" is specified for the PixelType property, and "1" to "255" is specified for the Threshold property. Note, however, that any value specified between "1" and "255" does not affect the quality of the image.

When "True" is specified for this property, the settings for the following properties are ignored: AutoBright, Background, Brightness, Contrast, Filter, Gamma and Sharpness.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

[ScanMode](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.169 SkipBlackPage Skip Black Pages

Feature

Configures whether to skip blank pages (black pages) when scanning continuously from an ADF.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**SkipBlackPage** [= Short]

Value

0 - Do not skip

For FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver

1 – 15 - Specify the ratio of white dots on a black page by increments of 0.2%. The maximum value that can be specified is 3.0%.

For PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver

1 – 50 - Specify the ratio of white dots on a black page by increments of 0.1%. The maximum value that can be specified is 5.0%.

Default

0 - Do not skip

Explanation

Specify whether to skip blank pages (black pages) when scanning continuously from an ADF.

A page is recognized as a blank page when the ratio of white dots is equal or less than the specified value.

Values of the FileCounter property and PageCount property are not updated on pages skipped.

This property is valid only when the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black & White."

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BlankPageSkipMode](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

[ScanTo](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

This property is ignored when the device does not support this property.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

Enabling this function makes the scanner to change the Cache Mode to [Ram cache] or [Use Both Memory] if the source (FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver) UI for cache settings is other than [Ram cache] or [Use Both Memory].

For the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver, it is recommended to use the BlankPageSkip property. The value set for the SkipBlackPage property is also applied to the BlankPageSkip property. The value is applied as shown below.

The value is not applied if it is set when designed.

This property		BlankPageSkip property
"1, 2"	→	"1"
"3, 4"	→	"2"
"5"	→	"3"
"6"	→	"4"
"7"	→	"5"
"8"	→	"6"
"9"	→	"7"
"10"	→	"8"
"11"	→	"9"
"12, 13"	→	"10"
"14 -50"	→	"11"

The property setting process to enable the value of this property for the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver.

Example: // The property setting process

AxFiScn1. BlankPageSkip = 3

AxFiScn1. SkipBlackPage = 10 → Since the SkipBlackPage value is set after
// Starting the process of scanning the BlankPageSkip, the SkipBlackPage
... value is applied to the BlankPageSkip.

1.1.170 SkipWhitePage Skip White Pages

Feature

Configures whether to skip blank pages (white pages) when scanning continuously from an ADF.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**SkipWhitePage** [= Short]

Value

0 - Do not skip

For FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver

1 – 15 - Specify the ratio of black dots on a white page by increments of 0.2% when the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black & White". The maximum value that can be specified is 3.0%.

When the PixelType property is grayscale or RGB, the specified value between 1 and 15 is re-evaluated into five levels. Skipping is more likely as a larger value is specified.

For PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver

1 – 50 - Specify the ratio of black dots on a white page by increments of 0.1% when the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black & White". The maximum value that can be specified is 5.0%.

Default

0 - Do not skip

Explanation

Specify whether to skip blank pages (white pages) when scanning continuously from an ADF.

A page is recognized as a blank page when the ratio of black dots is equal or less than the specified value.

Values of the FileCounter property and PageCount property are not updated on pages skipped.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BlankPageSkipMode](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

[ScanTo](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

This property is ignored when the device does not support this property.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

Enabling this function makes the scanner to change the Cache Mode to [Ram cache] or [Use Both Memory] if the source (FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver) UI for cache settings is other than [Ram cache] or [Use Both Memory].

For the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver, it is recommended to use the BlankPageSkip property. The value set for the SkipWhitePage property is also applied to the BlankPageSkip property. The value is applied as shown below.

The value is not applied if it is set when designed.

This property		BlankPageSkip property
"1, 2"	→	"1"
"3, 4"	→	"2"
"5"	→	"3"
"6"	→	"4"
"7"	→	"5"
"8"	→	"6"
"9"	→	"7"
"10"	→	"8"
"11"	→	"9"
"12, 13"	→	"10"
"14 -50"	→	"11"

The property setting process to enable the value of this property for the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver.

Example: // The property setting process

AxFiScn1. BlankPageSkip = 3

AxFiScn1. SkipWhitePage = 10 →

// Starting the process of scanning

...

Since the SkipWhitePage value is set after the BlankPageSkip, the SkipWhitePage value is applied to the BlankPageSkip.

1.1.171 Smoothing OCR Smoothing Mode / Background Removal

Feature

Configures the function smoothing rough lines and removes unevenness from the background.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolName.**Smoothing** [= Boolean]

Value

True	Enable smoothing mode
False	Disable smoothing mode

Default

False	Disables smoothing mode
-------	-------------------------

Explanation

This function will smooth rough lines and removes unevenness from the background.

This property is enabled only when the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black & White" and "0" is specified for the Threshold property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Because this property is not supported in devices without an image processing board, in such a case, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Note: Specification of this property is enabled or disabled (ignored) depending on the setting values of other properties. Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.172 SourceCurrentScan Scan with the Source Current Value

Feature

Configures whether to scan with the source current value.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**SourceCurrentScan** [= Boolean]

Value

True Scan with the source current value

False Scan with the value set in the OCX property

Default

False Scan with the value set in the OCX property

Explanation

Specify whether to use the value currently set on the source at scanning.

When this property is set to "True," the scan process is performed with the value currently set on the source.

The following properties are valid when this property is set to "True." (Any other properties except the followings are invalid.)

AIQCNotice

ScanTo

FileType

FileName

CompressionType

ScanCount

ShowSourceUI

SilentMode

FileCounter

JpegQuality

Indicator

Overwrite

MultiFeedNotice

If this property is set False, this control changes the following source parameter to execute a scan task.

- Multi Image setting ->The setting is disabled temporarily, but the source parameter is not changed.

*For information about the Multi Image setting, see the Explanatory materials for the TWAIN driver.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AIQCNotice](#)

[CompressionType](#)

[FileCounter](#)

[FileName](#)

[FileType](#)

[Indicator](#)

[JpegQuality](#)

[MultiFeedNotice](#)

[Overwrite](#)

[ScanCount](#)

[ScanTo](#)

[ShowSourceUI](#)
[SilentMode](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.173 sRGB sRGB output

Feature

Sets the sRGB output.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**sRGB** [= Boolean]

Value

True sRGB is output.

False sRGB is not output.

Default

False sRGB is not output.

Explanation

This sets the sRGB output.

This property is enabled only when "2 - RGB" is specified for the PixelType property. Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PaperSupply](#)

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.1.174 SynchronizationDigitalEndorser

.... Endorser / Imprinter and Digital Endorser synchronization function setting

Feature

Sets the endorser/imprinter and digital endorser synchronization function.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**SynchronizationDigitalEndorser** [= Boolean]

Value

True	Endorser/imprinter and digital endorser synchronization function is enabled.
False	Endorser/imprinter and digital endorser synchronization function is disabled.

Default

False Endorser/imprinter and digital endorser synchronization function is disabled.

Explanation

Sets the endorser/imprinter and digital endorser synchronization function.

This property is enabled only when the Endorser property is set to "True" and the DigitalEndorser property is set to "True".

When synchronization is performed, the properties of the endorser/imprinter below are applied to the corresponding properties of the digital endorser.

EndorserCountDirection property → DigitalEndorserCountDirection property

EndorserCounter property → DigitalEndorserCounter property

EndorserCountStep property → DigitalEndorserCountStep property

EndorserString property → DigitalEndorserString property

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[DigitalEndorser](#)

[Endorser](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.1.175 Threshold Threshold

Feature

Configures the threshold.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Threshold** [= Short]

Value

Value in the range from -2 to 255

- 0 Automatic (simple) binary mode
- 1 Automatic (advanced) binary mode
- 2 Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary mode
- 1 to 255 Simple slice binary threshold value

Default

128

Explanation

Specify the threshold value for the binarization process.

This property is valid only when the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black & White" and the Halftone property is set to "0 - None."

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[CompressionType](#)

[Halftone](#)

[PixelType](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range (value not between -2 and 255).

This property is ignored at scanning unless the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black & White" and the Halftone property is set to "0 - None."

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.176 ThresholdCurve Density Curve in Automatic Binarization

Feature

Configures the density curve while in automatic binarization.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ThresholdCurve** [= Short]

Value

0 - Curve1	Very light (for OCR)
1 - Curve2	Light (for OCR)
2 - Curve3	Normal 1 (for OCR)
3 - Curve4	Normal 2 (for OCR)
4 - Curve5	Dark (for OCR)
5 - Curve6	Very dark (for OCR)
6 - Curve7	Normal (for images)
7 - Curve8	Darkest (for images)

Default

0 - Curve1	Very light (for OCR)
------------	----------------------

Explanation

Specify the density curve when scanning in automatic binarization mode.

This property is valid only when the PixelType property is set to "0 - Black & White" and the Threshold property is set to "0." Otherwise, it will be disregarded.

Because this property is not supported in devices without an image processing board, in such a case, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Note: Specification of this property is enabled or disabled (ignored) depending on the setting values of other properties. Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PixelType](#)

[Threshold](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.177 TwainDS Data Source

Feature

Configures the TWAIN data source.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**TwainDS** [= String]

Value

The product name of the TWAIN data source.

(The source name which is displayed on the TWAIN data source selection screen)

The default TWAIN data source is used at scanning if "" (empty character string) is specified.

Default

"" (empty character string)

Explanation

Specify the TWAIN data source for scanning.

This is useful for defining a data source.

The TWAIN data source specified in this property does not affect the TWAIN default data source.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

[OpenScanner](#)

[OpenScanner2](#)

Related Properties

[TwainDSAnyPort](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

An error occurs if the specified data source does not exist.

When using the scanner connected via a USB port, if you change the current USB port to the other, the TWAIN data source name will be changed as in the example below.

Example:

Before changing the USB port: Fujitsu fi-6800

After changing the USB port: Fujitsu fi-6800 #2

This means that an error still occurs when you specify a desired data source in this property and change the USB port.

To avoid such an error, select one of the following ways:

- When using the PaperStream (TWAIN) driver and the SDK V2.2L95 or later

Set the TwainDSAnyPort property to "1- ON".

If the fiscn.ini file under the Windows directory (with C:\Windows as the default) has already been used, change the description in the file to the default as follows:

[Mode]

AnyPort=0

- When using the FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver or an SDK that is older than V2.2L95

Change the description in the fiscn.ini file under the Windows directory (with C:\Windows as the default) as follows:

(Default after the installation)

[Mode]

AnyPort=0
(Settings after the changes)
[Mode]
AnyPort=1

With the settings above, this function automatically searches for any numbered TWAIN data sources like #2, #3, etc., even if you have specified to search for unnumbered data sources. Note the character string is case-sensitive.

Compatibility and Restraints

Set this property before calling the OpenScanner method or OpenScanner2 method. (The OpenScanner method or OpenScanner2 method refers to this property.)

Call the TwainDSAnyPort property before calling this property.

1.1.178 TwainDSAnyPort Locking the Data Source Name

Feature

Sets whether or not to lock the TWAIN data source name that is to be used.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**TwainDSAnyPort** [= Short]

Value

0 - OFF	Does not lock the data source name
1 - ON	Locks the data source name

Default

0 - OFF	Does not lock the data source name
---------	------------------------------------

Explanation

When you use a scanner by connecting it to a USB port, "#n" is added to the TWAIN data source name after you disconnect it from the USB port and connect it to a different port. Whether or not to add "#n" to the TWAIN data source name is carried out by this property.

This function is useful when you want to restrict the TWAIN data source that is to be used.

When "0 - OFF" is set, "#n" is added to the TWAIN data source name after you disconnect the scanner from the USB port and connect it to a different port. Below is an example that shows the change in the TWAIN data source name.

(Example)

Before changing the USB port: Fujitsu fi-6800

After changing the USB port: Fujitsu fi-6800 #2

In the case that "1 - ON" is set, "#n" is not added to the TWAIN data source name even after you disconnect the scanner from the USB port and connect it to a different port. Below is an example that shows no change in the data source name.

(Example)

Before changing the USB port: Fujitsu fi-6800

After changing the USB port: Fujitsu fi-6800

This property must be set before the TwainDS property.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[TwainDS](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

When this property is set to "1 - ON", two or more scanners that are the same model cannot be connected to the same computer.

When this property is set to "1 - ON", restart the computer if you disconnect the scanner from the USB port and connect it to a different port.

Set this property before calling the OpenScanner method or the OpenScanner2 method.

(This property will be referenced by the OpenScanner method or the OpenScanner2 method.)

1.1.179 UndefinedScanning

.... Scanning an Undefined Length (Paper End Detection)

Feature

Configures whether to scan an undefined length (paper end detection).

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**UndefinedScanning** [= Boolean]

Value

True Scan an undefined length
False Do not scan an undefined length

Default

False Do not scan an undefined length

Explanation

Specify whether to scan an undefined length (paper end detection).

The scanner scans through the length of the document by detecting the paper end when scanning from an ADF.

Therefore, the output corresponding to each document can be produced when continuously scanning multiple documents with different lengths from an ADF.

This function is useful when scanning pages with various lengths.

However, scanning is not possible beyond the length specified in the PaperSize property.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)" and "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[AutoProfile](#)

[BackgroundColor](#)

[Deskew](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[FrontBackMergingEnabled](#)

[LengthDetection](#)

[OverScan](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

1.1.180 Unit unit of size (inch / centimeter / pixel)

Feature

Sets the unit of size (inch/centimeter/pixel).

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**Unit** [= Short]

Value

0 - Inches	Inches (inch)
1 - Centimeters	Centimeters (cm)
2 - Pixels	Pixels (Pixel)

Default

0 - Inches	Inches (inch)
------------	---------------

Explanation

Sets the unit of size (inch/centimeter/pixel).

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BarcodeRegionLeft](#)
[BarcodeRegionLength](#)
[BarcodeRegionTop](#)
[BarcodeRegionWidth](#)
[CustomPaperLength](#)
[CustomPaperWidth](#)
[DigitalEndorserXOffset](#)
[DigitalEndorserYOffset](#)
[EndorserOffset](#)
[EdgeFillerBottom](#)
[EdgeFillerLeft](#)
[EdgeFillerRigth](#)
[EdgeFillerTop](#)
[FrontBackMergingTargetSize](#)
[MultiFeedModeChangeSize](#)
[RegionLeft](#)
[RegionLength](#)
[RegionTop](#)
[RegionWidth](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

Value will not be updated if set beyond the setting range.

Depending on the setting value of this property, the valid range of setting values for the related properties varies.

0 - Inches	Up to three decimal places are valid
1 - Centimeters	Up to one decimal place is valid
2 - Pixels	Only integers are valid

Compatibility and Restraints
N/A

1.1.181 VerticalLineReduction Vertical line reduction setting

Feature

Sets whether the vertical lines are reduced.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**VerticalLineReduction** [= Boolean]

Value

True Vertical lines are reduced.

False Vertical lines are not reduced.

Default

False Vertical lines are not reduced.

Explanation

Sets vertical line reduction.

Note: The value in this property can be enabled by the settings of other properties. Or it may not be enabled (disregarded). Refer to "[3.2 Relationships Between Properties](#)".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoBorderDetection](#)

[DivideLongPage](#)

[PaperSupply](#)

Value Setting

When designed and when implemented.

Value Reference

When implemented.

Error Recovery

If this property cannot be enabled depending on device type, a scan will be carried out without regard to this property when scanning.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Compatibility and Restrictions

N/A

1.2 Methods

1.2.1 List of Methods

The following describes methods supported by Fujitsu Scanner Control SDK.

PaperStream IP(TWAIN) driver : PSIP
FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver : TWAIN

Method Name	Description	PSIP	TWAIN
AboutBox	Displays a dialog box for this Control's version information.	○	○
CancelScan	Stops scanning an image. This method is not supported by Java.	○	○
ClearPage	Ejects the document loaded on the ADF.	○	○
CloseScanner	Performs the termination process after scanning.	○	○
FeederLoaded	Notifies whether or not the document is loaded on the ADF.	○	○
GetCapability	Acquires the capability of the TWAIN data source from an application.	○	○
GetSerialNumber	Obtains a scanner serial number.	○	○
GetSlpcTemplateCount	Acquires the total number of templates created by the "Image Processing Software Option."	N/A	○
GetSlpcTemplateName	Acquires the template name corresponding to the template number specified by the "Image Processing Software Option."	N/A	○
GetSlpcTemplateSelect	Acquires the template number currently selected by the "Image Processing Software Option."	N/A	○
GetSourceCount	Gets the total number of data source.	○	○
GetSourceName	Gets a data source name.	○	○
GetSourceSelect	Gets an index of the data source currently selected.	○	○
GetTWAINTemplateCount	Acquires the total number of setting files / profiles created in the TWAIN driver.	○	○
GetTWAINTemplateName	Acquires the setting file / profile name corresponding to the setting file / profile number specified in the TWAIN driver.	○	○
GetTWAINTemplateSelect	Acquires the number of the setting file / profile currently selected in the TWAIN driver.	○	○
OpenScanner	Performs the initialization process before scanning.	○	○
OpenScanner2	Performs initialization process before scanning and assumes control of the scanner.	○	○
ScannerAvailable	Checks if the scanner is in the ready status.	○	○
SelectSource	Performs the selection process of the data source.	○	○
SelectSourceName	Selects a data source name that is used for scanning.	○	○
SetCapability	Configures the capability on the TWAIN data source from an application.	○	○

Method Name	Description	PSIP	TWAIN
SetSlpcTemplateSelect	Configures the template number which is used by the "Image Processing Software Option" for selection.	N/A	○
SetTWAINTemplateSelect	Configures numbers for setting files / profiles stored in the TWAIN driver.	○	○
SetupDataSourceProperties	Displays the user interface with the configurable sources.	○	○
StartScan	Starts scanning an image according to the specified properties.	○	○

1.2.2 Examples and Notation Conventions in This Chapter

Feature

Describes the outline of the method.

Coding Style

Describes the usage and syntax of the method when coding a program.

Describes codes in accordance with the conventions of Visual Basic.

Example) [form.] scancontrolname.AboutBox

The part between square brackets ([]) can be omitted.

Parameters

Describes arguments to be passed to the method.

Explanation

Describes the use and function of the property. In addition, notes and restraints regarding correlated properties are also described if necessary.

Target method

Shows the list of methods that, when processed, change the state of the property.

Related Properties

Gives all properties affecting each other.

Return Values

Describes return values from the method.

Error Recovery

Describes the handling in the event of invalid setting or processing.

Compatibility and Restraints

Describes differences in functionality between versions, or restraints on functionality, should such be the case.

Sample

Describes simple program samples where necessary.

1.2.3 AboutBox Version Information Dialog Box Display

Feature

Displays a dialog box for this Control's version information.



Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**AboutBox**

Parameters

N/A

Target method

N/A

Related Properties

N/A

Return Values

N/A

Sample

Displays a dialog box for this Control's version information.

[Visual Basic]

```
Private Sub Command5_Click()  
    ' Display the version information dialog box  
    AxFiScn1.AboutBox()  
End Sub
```

[Java]

```
try {  
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();  
    // Internal Initialization  
    initialize(obj);  
    // Display the version information dialog box  
    aboutBox();  
} catch (FiScnException e) {  
    // Fix error  
}  
finally {  
    // Internal End Process  
    unInitialize();  
}
```

1.2.4 CancelScan Stopping an Image Scanning

Feature

Stops scanning an image.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **CancelScan()** [= Integer]

Parameters

N/A

Return Values

0 : RC_SUCCESS	Normal end
-3 : RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR	Sequence error

Explanation

Stops a scan that is started by the StartScan method.

This method must be called from either the [ScanToDibEx](#), [ScanToRawEx](#), or [ScanToFile](#) event handler.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

For how to handle errors, refer to "3.1 Error code and how to fix error."

Compatibility and Restraints

This method is not supported by Java.

1.2.5 ClearPage Document Ejection

Feature

Ejects the document.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **ClearPage**(hWnd As Integer) [=Integer]

Parameters

hWnd Handle of the window where this Control (Fujitsu Scanner Control) is located.

Return Values

0 : RC_SUCCESS	Normal end
-1 : RC_FAILURE	Error
-3 : RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR	Sequence error (during the method execution)

Explanation

Ejects one page of the document loaded on the ADF. If there is already a page fed in the image scanner device, the method ejects the page, and ejects another page from the document loaded on the ADF.

The device memorizes the status of the page already fed even if the page is removed manually. In such cases, the device will eject two pages from the ADF.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ErrorCode](#)

Error Recovery

The value can be acquired from the ErrorCode property in the event of an error ("-1: RC_FAILURE").

For how to handle errors, refer to "3.1 Error code and how to fix error."

Compatibility and Restraints

If RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR is returned, it indicates the method is being executed by another form. The method can be retried after the execution. However, it is not recommended to design an application which executes the CloseScanner method while another form is executing the StartScan method. We strongly recommend that you issue such methods from the same form.

The ClearPage method is invalid on devices which do not support the function. (Example fi-65F)

Sample

Ejects the document loaded on the ADF.

[Visual Basic]

```
Private Sub Command6_Click()  
    ' Document ejection process  
    AxFiScn1.ClearPage(Me.Handle.ToInt32)  
End Sub
```

[Java]

```
try {  
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();  
    // Internal Initialization  
    initialize(obj);  
    // Document ejection process  
    clearPage();  
} catch (FiScnException e) {  
    //TODO: Fix error  
}  
finally {  
    // Fix error  
    unInitialize();  
}
```

1.2.6 CloseScanner Closing the Scanner

Feature

Performs a termination process.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**CloseScanner**(hWnd As Integer) [= Integer]

Parameters

hWnd Handle of the window where this Control (Fujitsu Scanner Control) is located.

Return Values

0 : RC_SUCCESS	Normal end
-1 : RC_FAILURE	Error
-3 : RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR	Sequence error (during the method execution)

Explanation

Performs the termination process after scanning.

Target method

[OpenScanner](#)

[OpenScanner2](#)

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ErrorCode](#)

Error Recovery

The value can be acquired from the ErrorCode property in the event of an error ("-1: RC_FAILURE").

For how to handle errors, refer to "3.1 Error code and how to fix error."

Compatibility and Restraints

If the OpenScanner method or OpenScanner2 method has been called, be sure to always call this method when exiting the application or when otherwise required. (This method must be paired with the OpenScanner method or OpenScanner 2 method.)

Also, if calling the StartScan method after this method was called, the OpenScanner method or OpenScanner2 method should be called again.

If RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR is returned, it indicates the method is being executed by another form. The method can be retried after the execution. However, it is not recommended to design an application which executes the CloseScanner method while another form is executing the StartScan method. We strongly recommend that you issue such methods from the same form.

Sample

Refer to the sample for the StartScan method.

1.2.7 FeederLoaded

.... Notifying Whether or Not a Document Is Loaded on the ADF

Feature

Notifies whether or not the document is loaded on the ADF.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**FeederLoaded**(hWnd As Integer) [= Boolean]

Parameters

hWnd Handle of the window where this Control (Fujitsu Scanner Control) is located.

Return Values

True Papers are loaded

False Papers are not loaded

Target method

N/A

Related Properties

[ErrorCode](#)

Error Recovery

Even if papers are loaded on the ADF, it does not mean that scanning is immediately possible. Scanning may not be possible, for example, when the cover is open.

When "False" is returned, refer to the ErrorCode property since it may contain an error.

Compatibility and Restraints

Return value is False while other methods are being performed.

1.2.8 GetCapability Capability Acquisition

Feature

Acquires the capability

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **GetCapability**(nCap As Short, nMsg As Short, nItemtype As Short, ByRef lpItemValue As Integer) [= Integer]

Parameters

nCap	Capability type	ex)ICAP_PIXELTYPE
nMsg	Message type	ex)MSG_GETCURRENT
nItemtype	Capability data type	ex)TWTY_UINT16
lpItemValue	The address where the capability value is stored.	

Return Values

0 : RC_SUCCESS	Normal end
-1 : RC_FAILURE	Error

Explanation

Knowledge of the TWAIN convention is required for calling this method. Refer to <http://www.twain.org/> for the TWAIN protocol.

Acquires the capability directly of the TWAIN data source from an application.

Call this method when receiving the [NegotiateCapabilities](#) event.

The supported message type which can be specified by nMsg is limited to MSG_GET/MSG_GETCURRENT/MSG_GETDEFAULT. Also, lpItemValue must be specified.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ErrorCode](#)

Error Recovery

The value can be acquired from the ErrorCode property in the event of an error (" -1: RC_FAILURE").

For how to handle errors, refer to "3.1 Error code and how to fix error."

Compatibility and Restraints

Acquisition of TWAIN data is not available when using the Image Processing Software Option.

1.2.9 GetSerialNumber Obtaining a scanner serial number

Feature

Obtains a scanner serial number.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **GetSerialNumber**(hWnd As Integer) [= BSTR]

Parameters

hWnd Handle of the window where this Control (Fujitsu Scanner Control) is located.

Return Values

Character string: Other than ""	Serial number
Character string: ""	Failed to obtain a serial number

Explanation

Obtains a scanner serial number.

Target method

N/A

Related Properties

[ErrorCode](#)

Error Recovery

If a serial number cannot be obtained, refer to the ErrorCode property because errors may be indicated.

Compatibility and Restraints

This method cannot be called while other methods are being performed. After other methods that are being performed are finished, this method can be called.

1.2.10 GetSlpcTemplateCount Total Number of Templates Acquisition

Feature

Acquires the total number of templates of the "Image Processing Software Option."

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **GetSlpcTemplateCount()** [= Integer]

Parameters

N/A

Return Values

0 – : The number of templates of the Image Processing Software Option

-1 : RC_FAILURE Acquisition failed

-2 : RC_SIPC_NOTINSTAL The Image Processing Software Option is not installed

Explanation

Acquires the total number of templates created (prepared in advance) by the "Image Processing Software Option."

Target method

[GetSlpcTemplateName](#)

[GetSlpcTemplateSelect](#)

[SetSlpcTemplateSelect](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

Sample

Displays a dialog box with a list of templates of the Image Processing Software Option to allow a template selection.

[Visual Basic]

```
Private Sub FormSoftIPC_Load(ByVal sender As System.Object, ByVal e As
System.EventArgs) Handles MyBase.Load
    Dim count As Short
    Dim Index As Short
    Dim strName As String
    ' Notify the number of templates of SoftIPC
    count = FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.GetSlpcTemplateCount
    ' Template list is not created when no template is present
    If count < 1 Then
        ButtonOK.Enabled = False
        IstTemplate.Enabled = False
        Exit Sub
    End If

    ' Create a template list for SoftIPC
    For Index = 0 To count - 1
        strName =
FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.GetSlpcTemplateName(Index)
        IstTemplate.Items.Add((strName))
    Next Index
    ' Notify the index value of the template currently selected
    Index = FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.GetSlpcTemplateSelect
    ' Make the currently selected template to the selected status
    IstTemplate.SelectedIndex = Index

End Sub

Private Sub cmdOK_Click()
    ' Configure the template currently selected
    FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.SetSlpcTemplateSelect(IstTemplate
.SelectedIndex)
    Me.Close()
End Sub
```

[Java]

```
long ISlpcTemplateCount = 0;

try {
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
    //Internal Initialization
    initialize(obj);
    // Acquires the number of templates of SoftIPC
    ISlpcTemplateCount = getSlpcTemplateCount();
} catch (FiScnException e) {
    //TODO: Fix error
} finally {
    //Internal End Process
    unInitialize();
}
```

1.2.11 GetSlpcTemplateName Template Name Acquisition

Feature

Acquires a template name of the specified template number by the "Image Processing Software Option."

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **GetSlpcTemplateName**(nTemplateIndex As Short) [= BSTR]

Parameters

nTemplateIndex Number of the template to be acquired (0 –)

Return Values

Character string: Template name, except ""

Character string: "" Acquisition failed

Explanation

Acquires the template name corresponding to the template number specified by the "Image Processing Software Option."

Target method

[GetSlpcTemplateCount](#)

[GetSlpcTemplateSelect](#)

[SetSlpcTemplateSelect](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

Sample

[Visual Basic]

Refer to the sample for the GetSlpcTemplateCount method.

[Java]

```
String strSlpcTemplateName = "";
try {
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
    // Internal Initialization
    initialize(obj);
    // Acquires the index value of the template name selected
    long lIndex = 0;
    strSlpcTemplateName = getSlpcTemplateName(lIndex);
} catch (FiScnException e) {
    //TODO: Fix error
} finally {
    // Internal End Process
    unInitialize();
}
```


1.2.12 GetSlpcTemplateSelect Selected Template Number Acquisition

Feature

Acquires the template number (0 –) selected by the "Image Processing Software Option."

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **GetSlpcTemplateSelect()** [= Integer]

Parameters

N/A

Return Values

0 – : Number of the selected template (0 –)

-1 : RC_FAILURE Acquisition failed

-2 : RC_SIPC_NOTINSTALL The Image Processing Software Option is not installed

Explanation

Acquires the template number (0 –) currently selected by the "Image Processing Software Option."

Target method

[GetSlpcTemplateCount](#)

[GetSlpcTemplateName](#)

[SetSlpcTemplateSelect](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

Sample

[Visual Basic]

Refer to the sample for the GetSlpcTemplateCount method.

[Java]

```
long ISlpcTemplateSelect ;
try {
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
    // Internal Initialization
    initialize(obj);
    // Acquires the template number (0 - ) selected.
    ISlpcTemplateSelect = getSlpcTemplateSelect();
} catch (FiScnException e) {
    //TODO: Fix error
} finally {
    // Internal End Process
    unInitialize();
}
```

1.2.13 GetSourceCount Getting the total number of data source

Feature

Gets the total number of data source.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **GetSourceCount()** [= Integer]

Parameters

N/A

Return Values

1 – : Total number of data source

-1 : RC_FAILURE Getting the value failed

Explanation

Gets the total number of data source.

Always call this method before calling the GetSourceSelect, GetSourceName, and SelectSourceName methods.

Target method

[GetSourceName](#)

[GetSourceSelect](#)

[SelectSourceName](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

Sample

Displays a dialog box with a list of data source names to allow data source to be select.

[Visual Basic]

```
Private Sub Form_SourceList_Load (ByVal sender As System.Object, ByVal e
As System.EventArgs) Handles MyBase.Load
    Dim count As Short
    Dim Index As Short
    Dim strName As String

    ' Open the scanner.
    FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.OpenScanner2(Me.Handle.ToInt32)

    ' Get the total number of data source
    count = FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.GetSourceCount
    If count < 1 Then
        ButtonOK.Enabled = False
        IstSource.Enabled = False
        Exit Sub
    End If

    ' Create a Source list for data source
    For Index = 0 To count - 1
        strName= FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1. GetSourceName
(Index)
        IstSource.Items.Add((strName))
    Next Index

    ' Notify the index value of the data source currently selected
    Index = FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.GetSourceSelect
    ' Make the currently selected data source to the selected status
    IstSource.SelectedIndex = Index
End Sub

Private Sub ButtonOK_Click (ByVal sender As System.Object, ByVal e As
System.EventArgs) Handles ButtonOK.Click
    ' Configure the data source currently selected
    FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1. SelectSourceName
(IstSource.Text)
    Me.Close()
End Sub
```

[Java]

```
long lSourceCount = 0;
try {
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
    // Internal Initialization
    initialize(obj);
    // Get the total number of data source
    lSourceCount = getSourceCount();
} catch (FiScnException e) {
    //TODO: Fix error
} finally {
    // Internal End Process
    unInitialize();
}
```

1.2.14 GetSourceName Getting a data source name

Feature

Gets a data source name.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **GetSourceName**(nSourceIndex As Short) [= BSTR]

Parameters

nSourceIndex Index (0 –)

Return Values

Character string: Other than "" Data source name

Character string: "" Could not obtain

Explanation

This function gets the name of the data source that corresponds to the data source index. Before calling this method, always call the GetSourceCount method first.

Target method

[GetSourceCount](#)

[GetSourceSelect](#)

[SelectSourceName](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

Sample

[Visual Basic]

Refer to the sample for the GetSourceCount method.

[Java]

```
String strSourceName = "";  
try {  
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();  
    // Internal Initialization  
    initialize(obj);  
    // Get the total number of data source  
    getSourceCount();  
    // Acquires the index value of the data source name selected  
    long lIndex = 0;  
    strSourceName = getSourceName(lIndex);  
} catch (FiScnException e) {  
    //TODO: Fix error  
}  
finally {  
    // Internal End Process  
    unInitialize();  
}
```

1.2.15 GetSourceSelect Getting the index of a selected data source

Feature

Gets the index of a selected data source.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **GetSourceSelect()** [= Integer]

Parameters

None

Return Values

0 – : Index of a selected data source (0 –)

-1 : RC_FAILURE Getting the value failed

Explanation

This function gets the index of the data source currently selected.

Before calling this method, always call the GetSourceCount method first.

Target method

[GetSourceCount](#)

[GetSourceName](#)

[SelectSourceName](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A.

Sample

[Visual Basic]

Refer to the sample for the GetSourceCount method.

[Java]

```
long ISourceSelect ;
try {
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
    // Internal Initialization
    initialize(obj);
    // Get the total number of data source
    getSourceCount();
    // Get the index value of the data source currently selected
    ISourceSelect = getSourceSelect();
} catch (FiScnException e) {
    // TODO: Fix error
} finally {
    // Internal End Process
    unInitialize();
}
```

1.2.16 GetTWAINTemplateCount Setting File / profile Total Number Acquisition

Feature

Acquires the total number of setting files / profiles in the TWAIN driver.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **GetTWAINTemplateCount()** [= Integer]

Parameters

N/A

Return Values

0 – : Number of setting files / profiles in the TWAIN driver

-1 : RC_FAILURE Acquisition failed

-2 : RC_TWAIN_NOTINSTAL The TWAIN driver is not installed

Explanation

Acquires the total number of setting files / profiles created (including those available by default) in the TWAIN driver.

Target method

[GetTWAINTemplateName](#)

[GetTWAINTemplateSelect](#)

[SetTWAINTemplateSelect](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

Sample

Displays a dialog box containing a list of setting files / profiles stored in the TWAIN driver to allow a setting file / profile selection.

```
[Visual Basic]  
Private Sub FormTWAIN_Load (ByVal sender As System.Object, ByVal e As  
System.EventArgs) Handles MyBase.Load  
    Dim count As Short  
    Dim Index As Short  
    Dim strName As String  
  
    'Opens the scanner.  
    FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.OpenScanner2(Me.Handle.ToInt32)  
  
    'Notify the number of templates of TWAIN  
    count = FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.GetTWAINTemplateCount  
    'Template list is not created when no template is present  
    If count < 1 Then  
        ButtonOK.Enabled = False  
        lstTemplate.Enabled = False  
        Exit Sub  
    End If  
  
    'Create a template list for TWAIN  
    For Index = 0 To count - 1  
        strName=  
FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.GetTWAINTemplateName(Index)  
        lstTemplate.Items.Add((strName))  
    Next Index  
    'Notify the index value of the template currently selected  
    Index = FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.GetTWAINTemplateSelect  
    'Make the currently selected template to the selected status  
    lstTemplate.SelectedIndex = Index  
  
End Sub  
  
Private Sub ButtonOK_Click(ByVal sender As System.Object, ByVal e As  
System.EventArgs) Handles ButtonOK.Click  
    'Configure SourceCurrentScan currently selected  
    FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.SourceCurrentScan=FormScan.Cur  
rentInstance.MenuitemSourceCurrentScan.Checked  
    'Configure the template currently selected  
    FormScan.CurrentInstance.AxFiScn1.SetTWAINTemplateSelect(lstTempl  
ate.SelectedIndex)
```

```
[Java]
    long ITWAINTemplateCount = 0;

    try {
        FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
        //Internal Initialization
        initialize(obj);
        // Acquires the number of templates of TWAIN
        ITWAINTemplateCount = getTWAINTemplateCount();
    } catch (FiScnException e) {
        //TODO: Fix error
    } finally {
        //Internal End Process
        unInitialize();
    }
}
```

1.2.17 GetTWAINTemplateName Setting File / profile Name Acquisition

Feature

Acquires the setting file / profile name corresponding to the setting file / profile number specified in the TWAIN driver.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. GetTWAIN**TemplateName**(nTemplateIndex As Short) [= BSTR]

Parameters

nTemplateIndex Number of the template to be acquired (0 –)

Return Values

Character string: Name of setting files / profiles, except ""

Character string: "" Acquisition failed

Explanation

Acquires the setting file / profile name corresponding to the setting file / profile number specified in the TWAIN driver.

Target method

[GetTWAINTemplateCount](#)

[GetTWAINTemplateSelect](#)

[SetTWAINTemplateSelect](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

Sample

[Visual Basic]

Refer to the sample for the GetTWAINTemplateCount method.

[Java]

```
String strTWAINTemplateName = "";
try {
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
    // Internal Initialization
    initialize(obj);
    //Acquires the index value of the template name selected
    long lIndex = 0;
    strTWAINTemplateName = getTWAINTemplateName(lIndex);
} catch (FiScnException e) {
    //TODO: Fix error
} finally {
    // Internal End Process
    unInitialize();
}
```

1.2.18 GetTWAINTemplateSelect

.... Selected Setting File / profile Number Acquisition

Feature

Acquires the number (0 –) of a selected setting file / profile in the TWAIN driver."

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **GetTWAINTemplateSelect()** [= Integer]

Parameters

N/A

Return Values

0 – : Number of the selected template / profile (0 –)

-1 : RC_FAILURE Acquisition failed

-2 : RC_TWAIN_NOTINSTALL The TWAIN driver is not installed

Explanation

Acquires the number (0 –) of a selected setting file / profile in the TWAIN driver.

Target method

[GetTWAINTemplateCount](#)

[GetTWAINTemplateName](#)

[SetTWAINTemplateSelect](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

Sample

[Visual Basic]

Refer to the sample for the GetTWAINTemplateCount method.

[Java]

```
long ITWAINTemplateSelect ;
try {
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
    // Internal Initialization
    initialize(obj);
    // Acquires the template number (0 - ) selected.
    ITWAINTemplateSelect = getTWAINTemplateSelect();
} catch (FiScnException e) {
    //TODO: Fix error
} finally {
    // Internal End Process
    unInitialize();
}
```

1.2.19 OpenScanner Opening the Scanner

Feature

Performs the initialization process before scanning.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**OpenScanner**(hWnd As Integer) [= Integer]

Parameters

hWnd Handle of the window where this Control (Fujitsu Scanner Control) is located.

Return Values

0 : RC_SUCCESS	Normal end
2 : RC_NOT_DS_FJTWAIN	Not " TWAIN driver"
-1 : RC_FAILURE	Error
-3 : RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR	Sequence error (during the method execution)

Explanation

Acquires scanner information and performs the associated initialization process.
Applications must call this method or the OpenScanner2 method before calling the StartScan method.

Target method

[CloseScanner](#)

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ErrorCode](#)

[IsExistsFB...](#) Set by this method

[ImageScanner...](#) Set by this method

[TwainDS...](#) Referred to by this method

Error Recovery

The value can be acquired from the ErrorCode property in the event of an error ("-1: RC_FAILURE").

For how to handle errors, refer to "3.1 Error code and how to fix error."

Compatibility and Restraints

Set so that applications call this method or the OpenScanner2 method before calling the StartScan method (such as during application startup).

If the StartScan method is called without calling this method or the OpenScanner2 method, the properties may not be applied properly to the source, a file may not be created properly, or other problems may occur.

If this method or OpenScanner2 method has been called, be sure to always call the CloseScanner method when exiting the application or when otherwise required. (The CloseScanner method must be paired with this method or the OpenScanner2 method.)

Also, if calling the StartScan method after the CloseScanner method was called, set so that this method or the OpenScanner2 method is called again.

If RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR is returned, it indicates the method is being executed by another form. The method can be retried after the execution. However, it is not recommended to design an application which executes the CloseScanner method while another form is executing the StartScan method. We strongly recommend that you issue such methods from the same form.

Prevent two or more control instances from being generated. If two or more instances issue methods, operations are not guaranteed.

Sample

Refer to the sample for the StartScan method.

1.2.20 OpenScanner2 Open scanner (part 2)

Feature

Performs initialization process before scanning and assumes control of the scanner.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**OpenScanner2**(hWnd As Integer) [= Integer]

Parameters

hWnd Handle of the window where this Control (Fujitsu Scanner Control) is located.

Return Value

0 : RC_SUCCESS	Normal end
2 : RC_NOT_DS_FJTWAIN	Not " TWAIN driver"
-1 : RC_FAILURE	Error
-3 : RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR	Sequence error (during method execution)

Explanation

Acquires scanner information and performs the associated initialization process.

Applications must call this method or the OpenScanner method.

After calling of this method, the scanner driver continues to be open until the CloseScanner method is called, and this method assumes control of the scanner. As a result, compared to the case when the OpenScanner method is called, the processing speed by the following methods is faster.

- [FeederLoaded](#)
- [GetTWAINTemplateCount](#)
- [GetTWAINTemplateName](#)
- [GetTWAINTemplateSelect](#)
- [ScannerAvailable](#)
- [SetTWAINTemplateSelect](#)
- [SetupDataSourceProperties](#)
- [StartScan](#)

Although the scanning start speed is faster when using this method, because the scanner is controlled by this method, the scanner cannot be used by other applications.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

[CloseScanner](#)

Related Properties

[ErrorCode](#)

[IsExistsFB...](#) Set by this method

[ImageScanner...](#) Set by this method

[TwainDS...](#) Referred to by this method

Error Recovery

The value can be acquired from the ErrorCode property in the event of an error ("-1: RC_FAILURE").

For how to handle errors, "3.1 Error Codes and Error Recovery Procedures".

Compatibility and Restrictions

- Set so that applications call this method or the OpenScanner method before calling the StartScan method (such as during application startup).

- If the StartScan method is called without calling this method or the OpenScanner method, the properties may not be applied properly to the source, a file may not be created properly, or other problems may occur.

- If this method or the OpenScanner method has been called, be sure to always call the CloseScanner method when exiting the application or when otherwise required. (This method or the OpenScanner method must be paired with the CloseScanner method.)
- If an RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR is reported, this indicates that the method is being executed in another form, and a retry is possible once the currently-running method has been completed. However, we cannot recommend application designs where the CloseScanner method is executed from another form during execution of the StartScan method from a given form. Issuing from the same form is strongly recommended.
- Prevent two or more control instances from being generated. If two or more instances issue methods, operations are not guaranteed.
- When you call the OpenScanner2 method, and then start up a process other than the scanning process to run alongside the OpenScanner2 method, if a read error (such as a multifeed or out of paper error) occurs in the StartScan method, you may receive a double open error notification (EC_ERROR_MAX_CONNECTIONS) from the TWAIN driver. In this case, you may be able to avoid the double open error notification by starting a process other than the scanning process before calling the OpenScanner2 method.

Example)

<Read sequence (Before)>

1. Calling the OpenScanner2 method
2. Starting up a process other than the scanning process
3. Calling the StartScan method (*A double open error is notified)
4. Calling the CloseScanner method

<Read sequence (After)>

1. Starting up a process other than the scanning process
2. Calling the OpenScanner2 method
3. Calling the StartScan method
4. Calling the CloseScanner method

Sample

For details on how to use this method, refer to the OpenScanner method.

1.2.21 ScannerAvailable Image Scanner Availability

Feature

Checks if the device (scanner) is in the ready status.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**ScannerAvailable**(hWnd As Integer) [= Boolean]

Parameters

hWnd Handle of the window where this Control (Fujitsu Scanner Control) is located.

Return Values

True Available

False Unavailable or error

Target method

N/A

Related Properties

[ErrorCode](#)

Error Recovery

Available status indicates that the device is online. However, this status does not always mean that scanning is immediately possible. Scanning may not be possible, for example, when the cover is open.

When "False" is returned, refer to the ErrorCode property since it may contain an error.

Compatibility and Restraints

"False" is returned when the method is being executed.

Sample

Displays whether the device (scanner) is in the ready status.

[Visual Basic]

```
Private Sub Command7_Click()  
    Dim status As Boolean  
    ' Whether the image scanner is available  
    status = AxFiScn1.ScannerAvailable(Me.Handle.ToInt32)  
    If status = FALSE Then  
        MsgBox ("Device unavailable or error ")  
    Else  
        MsgBox ("Device ready ")  
    End If  
End Sub
```

[Java]

```
try {  
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();  
    //Internal Initialization  
    initialize(obj);  
    // Whether the image scanner is available  
    scannerAvailable ();  
} catch (FiScnException e) {  
    //TODO: Fix error  
}  
finally {  
    // Internal End Process  
    unInitialize();  
}
```

1.2.22 SelectSource Data source Selection

Feature

Performs the selection process of the data source.

Note: Specify the driver (data source) of the device.



Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**SelectSource**(hWnd As Integer) [= Integer]

Parameters

hWnd Handle of the window where this Control (Fujitsu Scanner Control) is located.

Return Values

0 : RC_SUCCESS	Normal end
1 : RC_CANCEL	Canceled by the user
-1: RC_FAILURE	Error
-3: RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR	Sequence error (method in execution)

Explanation

This is used to select the data source.

Set so that the OpenScanner method or OpenScanner2 method is called after calling this method.

Target method

N/A

Related Properties

[ErrorCode](#)

Error Recovery

When no data source is present in the system, the Cancel button only is enabled in the selection dialog box.

The value can be acquired from the ErrorCode property in the event of an error ("-1: RC_FAILURE").

For how to handle errors, refer to "3.1 Error code and how to fix error."

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

Sample

Displays the "Select Source" (scanner selection) screen.

[Visual Basic]

```
Private Sub Command3_Click()  
    ' Performing the data source selection process.  
    AxFiScn1.SelectSource(Me.Handle.ToInt32)  
    ' Open the scanner.  
    AxFiScn1.OpenScanner(Me.Handle.ToInt32)  
End Sub
```

[Java]

```
long ISelectSource = 0;  
try {  
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();  
    // Internal Initialization  
    initialize(obj);  
    // Performing the data source selection process.  
    ISelectSource = selectSource();  
    // Open the scanner.  
    openScanner();  
} catch (FiScnException e) {  
    //TODO: Fix error  
}  
finally {  
    // Internal End Process  
    unInitialize();  
}
```

1.2.23 SelectSourceName data source selection

Feature

Select a data source.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **SelectSourceName**(SourceName As String) [= Integer]

Parameters

SourceName	Data source name used
------------	-----------------------

Return Values

0 : RC_SUCCESS	Normal end
-1 : RC_FAILURE	Error

Explanation

Select a data source that is used for scanning.

After calling this method, always call the OpenScanner method and OpenScanner2 method.

Target method

[GetSourceCount](#)

[GetSourceName](#)

[GetSourceSelect](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A.

Sample

The data source is selected by the name.

[Visual Basic]

Refer to the sample for the **GetSourceCount** method.

[Java]

```
String sourceName = "PaperStream IP fi-7180";
try {
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
    // Internal Initialization
    initialize(obj);
    // Select a data source
    selectSourceName(sourceName);
    openScanner();
} catch (FiScnException e) {
    //TODO: Fix error
} finally {
    // Internal End Process
    unInitialize();
}
```

1.2.24 SetCapability Capability Configuration

Feature

Configures the capability.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **SetCapability**(nCap As Short, nItem Type As Short, lItemValue As Integer) [= Integer]

Parameters

nCap	Capability type	ex)ICAP_PIXELTYPE
nItem Type	Capability data type	ex)TWTY_UINT16
lItemValue	Capability value	ex)TWPT_BW

Return Values

0 :RC_SUCCESS	Normal end
-1:RC_FAILURE	Error

Explanation

Knowledge of the TWAIN convention is required for calling this method. Refer to <http://www.twain.org/> for the TWAIN protocol.

Configures the capability directly on the TWAIN data source from an application.

Call this method when receiving the [NegotiateCapabilities](#) event.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ErrorCode](#)

Error Recovery

The value can be acquired from the ErrorCode property in the event of an error ("-1: RC_FAILURE").

For how to handle errors, refer to "3.1 Error code and how to fix error."

Compatibility and Restraints

Configuration of TWAIN data is not available when using the Image Processing Software Option.

1.2.25 SetSlpcTemplateSelect Template Number Specification

Feature

Configures the template number to be selected (enabled) in the "Image Processing Software Option."

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **SetSlpcTemplateSelect**(nTemplateIndex As Short) [= Integer]

Parameters

nTemplateIndex Number of the template to be selected (0 –)

Return Values

0 – : Selected template number (0 –)

-1 : RC_FAILURE Configuration failed

-2 : RC_SIPC_NOTINSTALL The Image Processing Software Option is not installed

Explanation

Configures the template number (0 –) which is used by the "Image Processing Software Option" for selection.

Target method

[GetSlpcTemplateCount](#)

[GetSlpcTemplateName](#)

[GetSlpcTemplateSelect](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

N/A

Sample

[Visual Basic]

Refer to the sample for the GetSlpcTemplateCount method.

[Java]

```
long lSelectSource = 0;
try {
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
    // Internal Initialization
    initialize(obj);
    // Configures the template number
    setSlpcTemplateSelect(lSelectSource);
} catch (FiScnException e) {
    //TODO: Fix error
} finally {
    // Internal End Process
    unInitialize();
}
```


1.2.26 SetTWAINTemplateSelect Configuring Setting File / profile Numbers

Feature

Configures numbers for setting files / profiles stored in the TWAIN driver."

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname. **SetTWAINTemplateSelect**(nTemplateIndex As Short) [= Integer]

Parameters

nTemplateIndex Number of the template to be selected (0 –)

Return Values

0 – : Number of selected setting files / profiles (0 –)

-1 : RC_FAILURE Configuration failed

-2 : RC_TWAIN_NOTINSTALL The TWAIN driver is not installed

Explanation

Configures numbers (0 –) for setting files / profiles stored in the TWAIN driver.

Target method

[GetTWAINTemplateCount](#)

[GetTWAINTemplateName](#)

[GetTWAINTemplateSelect](#)

Related Properties

[SourceCurrentScan](#)

Error Recovery

N/A (No value can be obtained from the ErrorCode property at the time of error occurrence.)

Compatibility and Restraints

To use this method, set the SourceCurrentScan property to "True." When the property is set to "False", setting file / profile numbers are set to 0 by this method.

Sample

[Visual Basic]

Refer to the sample for the GetTWAINTemplateCount method.

[Java]

```
long ITemplateSelect = 0;
try {
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
    // Internal Initialization
    initialize(obj);
    // Configures the template number
    setTWAINTemplateSelect(ITemplateSelect);
} catch (FiScnException e) {
    //TODO: Fix error
} finally {
    // Internal End Process
    unInitialize();
}
```

1.2.27 SetupDataSourceProperties Settable UI Display

Feature

Displays source configuration dialog box.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**SetupDataSourceProperties**(hWnd As Integer) [= Integer]

Parameters

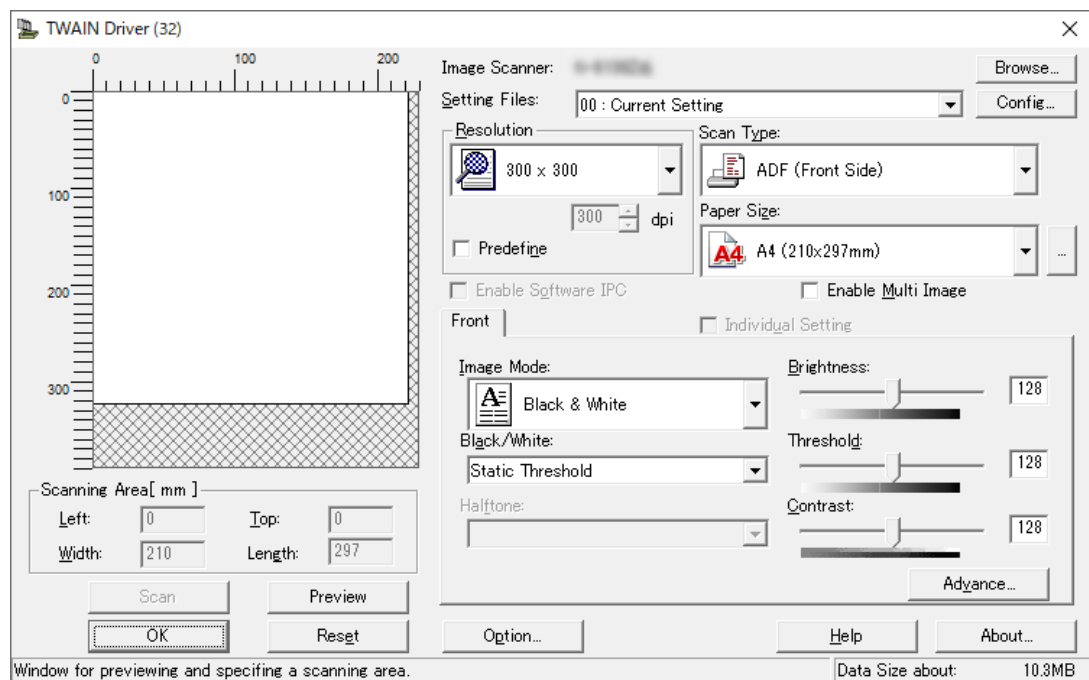
hWnd Handle of the window where this Control (Fujitsu Scanner Control) is located.

Return Values

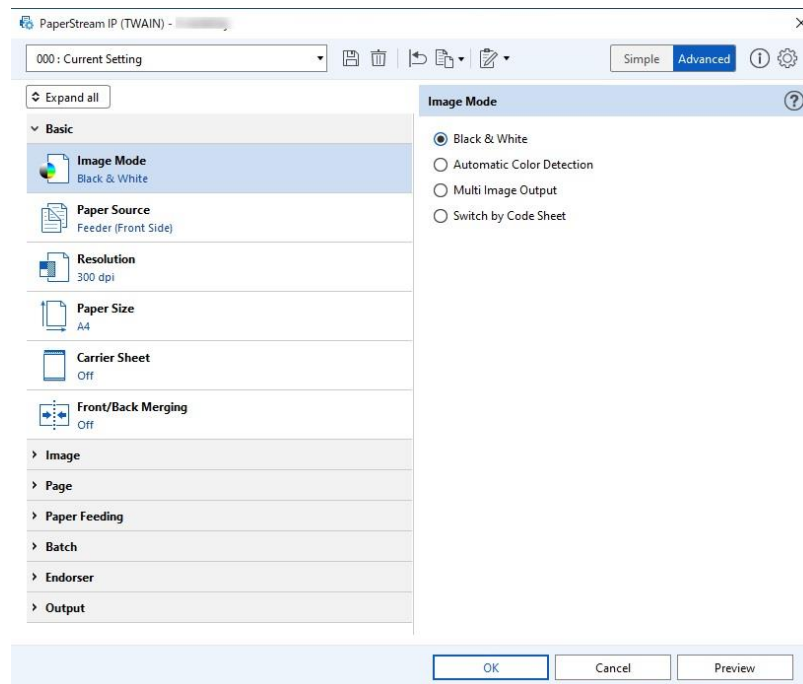
0 : RC_SUCCESS	Normal end
-1 : RC_FAILURE	Error
-3 : RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR	Sequence error (during the method execution)

Explanation

Displays the user interface (the same as TWAIN driver) for the source which allows configuration of values only. (Read startup cannot be initiated from this user interface.)



Example of the FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver user interface display



Example of the PaperStream IP(TWAIN) driver user interface display

If the compression specification is invalid due to the ScanTo property and the FileType property, "0 - No Compress" is set to the CompressionType property.

Reference

This method enables the parameter configuration on the user interface when a user system does not provide its own parameter configuration screen.

If calling the StartScan method after calling this method, always set "True" to the SourceCurrentScan property prior to calling the StartScan method. Otherwise, functions configured by this method are replaced by values of properties configured on this Control before scanning.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

ScanTo	(Reference only)
FileType	(Reference only)
CompressionType	(Reference, update as necessary)
PixelType	(Update as necessary)

Note (Configure before calling the StartScan method after calling this method)

[SourceCurrentScan](#)

[ShowSourceUI](#)

Error Recovery

The value can be acquired from the ErrorCode property in the event of an error ("-1: RC_FAILURE").

For how to handle errors, refer to "3.1 Error code and how to fix error."

Compatibility and Restraints

If RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR is returned, it indicates the method is being executed by another form. The method can be retried after the execution. However, it is not recommended to design an application which executes the CloseScanner method while

another form is executing the StartScan method. We strongly recommend that you issue such methods from the same form.

Sample

Displays the user interface (the same as TWAIN driver) for the source which allows configuration only.

[Visual Basic]

```
Private Sub Command8_Click()  
    ' Display a user interface which allows configuration only  
    AxFiScn1.SetupDataSourceProperties (Me.Handle.ToInt32)  
End Sub
```

[Java]

```
long lSelectSource = 0;  
try {  
    FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();  
    // Internal Initialization  
    initialize(obj);  
    // Display a user interface which allows configuration only  
    setupDataSourceProperties ();  
} catch (FiScnException e) {  
    //TODO: Fix error  
}  
finally {  
    // Internal End Process  
    unInitialize();  
}  
}
```

1.2.28 StartScan Starting an Image Scanning

Feature

Starts scanning an image.

Coding Style

[form.] scancontrolname.**StartScan**(hWnd As Integer) [= Integer]

Parameters

hWnd Handle of the window where this Control (Fujitsu Scanner Control) is located.

Return Values

0 : RC_SUCCESS	Normal end
1 : RC_CANCEL	Canceled by the user, or an error which causes the device to be unable to continue scanning (insufficient disk space, image transfer error, etc.)
-1 : RC_FAILURE	Error
-3 : RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR	Sequence error (during the method execution)

Explanation

Starts scanning an image according to the specified properties.

Always call the OpenScanner method or OpenScanner2 method before calling this method.

Target method

[CloseScanner](#)

[OpenScanner](#)

[OpenScanner2](#)

Related Properties

All properties except [IsExistFB](#) and [ImageScanner](#).

Error Recovery

The value can be acquired from the ErrorCode property in the event of an error ("-1: RC_FAILURE").

For how to handle errors, refer to "3.1 Error code and how to fix error."

This method reports the return value "0" (Normal end) if the Close button is clicked instead of the Scan button on the user interface (UI) of the source. Therefore, check the PageCount property together with this return value to determine if the actual scan has been performed.

An error occurs (EC_ERROR_FEEDPAGE) if there is no document in the ADF when StartScan runs. If there is no document in the ADF after one or more documents are scanned, it ends normally.

Compatibility and Restraints

Always call this method between the OpenScanner or Openscanner2 method and the CloseScanner method.

If this method is called in any other manner, the property values may not be applied properly, or a file may not be created properly.

Example) Calling the StartScan method

OpenScanner // (At the startup of an application, etc.)

↓

StartScan

↓

CloseScanner

↓

OpenScanner // After CloseScanner is executed, be sure to call up OpenScanner or
 // OpenScanner2 for another scan.

↓
StartScan

↓
CloseScanner

OpenScanner // (At the startup of an application, etc.)

↓
StartScan

↓
StartScan // When scanning again.

↓
CloseScanner

X Incorrect calling method

OpenScanner // (When an application window is generated, etc.)

↓
StartScan

↓
CloseScanner

↓
StartScan

X The StartScan method is called after the CloseScanner method without calling the OpenScanner or Openscanner2 method.

If RC_SEQUENCE_ERROR is returned, it indicates the method is being executed by another form. The method can be retried after the execution. However, it is not recommended to design an application which executes the CloseScanner method while another form is executing the StartScan method. We strongly recommend that you issue such methods from the same form.

After changing the feeding method from ADF to flatbed, it takes some time for scanning to start when this method is executed.

Sample

The following code indicates from opening of the scanner, starting of scanning, to closing of the scanner.

```
[Visual Basic]
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    Dim status As Integer

    ' Specify whether to display the source user interface (UI)
    AxFiScn1.ShowSourceUI = False      ' Not to display
    ' Specify the file format
    AxFiScn1.FileType = 0               ' bitmap file
    ' Specify the file name to save the image
    AxFiScn1.filename = "c:\img\img#####"
    ' Specify the start number of the sequence number attached to the file
    AxFiScn1.FileCounter = 1           ' Start number 1
    ' Specify whether to overwrite the file.
    AxFiScn1.Overwrite = 1             ' Overwrite
    ' Specify the paper feed method.
    AxFiScn1.PaperSupply = 1           ' ADF
    ' Specify the document size.
    AxFiScn1.PaperSize = 1             ' A4 size
    ' Specify the pixel type.
    AxFiScn1.PixelType = 1            ' Grayscale
    ' Specify the resolution for scanning.
    AxFiScn1.Resolution = 0            ' 200dpi
    ' Open the scanner.
    status = AxFiScn1.OpenScanner(Me.Handle.ToInt32)
    ' Scanner open error
    If status = -1 Then
        Exit Sub
    End If

    ' Start scanning an image.
    status = AxFiScn1.StartScan(Me.Handle.ToInt32)
    ' Scan successful
    If status = 0 Then
        ' Display the scanned image on the image control.
        Image1.Picture = LoadPicture("c:\img\img00001.bmp")
        Image1.Refresh
    End If

    ' Close the scanner.
    AxFiScn1.CloseScanner (Me.Handle.ToInt32)

End Sub
```

```

[Java]
public void Scan() {
    long lStatus = 0;
    try {
        FiscnSampleApl obj = new FiscnSampleApl();
        //Internal Initialization
        initialize(obj);
        // Specify whether to display the source user interface (UI)
        setShowSourceUI(false);           // Not to display
        //Specify the file format
        setFileType(0);                   //bitmap file
        //Specify the file name to save the image
        setFileName = "c:\\img\\img#####"
        // Specify the start number of the sequence number attached to the file
        setFileCounter(1);                // Start number 1
        // Specify whether to overwrite the file
        setOverwrite(1);                   // Overwrite
        // Specify the paper feed method.
        setPaperSupply(1);                 //ADF
        // Specify the document size.
        setPaperSize(1);                   //A4 size
        // Specify the pixel type.
        setPixelFormat(1);                 // Grayscale
        // Specify the resolution for scanning.
        setResolution(0);                  //200dpi
        // Open the scanner.
        openScanner();
        // Start scanning an image.
        lStatus = startScan();
        // Scan successful
        if (lStatus == 0){
            // TODO: Execute a normal end process.
        }
        // Close the scanner.
        closeScanner();
    } catch (FiScnException e) {
        //TODO: Fix error
    } finally {
        //Internal End Process
        unInitialize();
    }
}

```


1.3 Events

1.3.1 List of Events

The following describes events supported by Fujitsu Scanner Control SDK.

PaperStream IP(TWAIN) driver : PSIP

FUJITSU TWAIN32 driver : TWAIN

Event Name	Description	PSIP	TWAIN
AutoProfileSelection	Information about an applied profile and registered form is issued.	○	N/A
DetectBarcode	Issued when a barcode is detected.	○	N/A
DetectBarcodeDetail	Issued when a barcode detail is detected.	○	N/A
DetectJobSeparator	Issued when a special document (document with a specific shape) or patch code document is detected.	○	○
DetectPatchCode	Issued when a patch code is detected.	○	N/A
MultiStreamPropertySetting	Issues an event that sets properties for each image.	○	N/A
NegotiateCapabilities	Configures the TWAIN capability which cannot be configured by this Control.	○	○
PagePartition	Issued at a page break.	○	○
ScanToDib	Issued by the scanning process (the StartScan method) for each scanned page when the ScanTo property is set to "1 - Dib Handle" This event is not supported by Java. This is a compatible event. Use the ScanToDibEx event.	○	○
ScanToDibEx	Issued by the scanning process (the StartScan method) for each scanned page when the ScanTo property is set to "1 - Dib Handle" This event is not supported by Java.	○	○
ScanToFile	Issued by the scanning process (the StartScan method) for each scanned page when the ScanTo property is set to "0 - File" This event is not supported by Java.	○	○
ScanToRaw	Issued by the scanning process (the StartScan method) for each scanned page when the ScanTo property is set to "2 - Raw Image Handle" This event is not supported by Java. This is a compatible event. Use the ScanToRawEx event.	○	○
ScanToRawEx	Issued by the scanning process (the StartScan method) for each scanned page when the ScanTo property is set to "2 - Raw Image Handle" This event is not supported by Java.	○	○

1.3.2 Notes on a Process Written in an Event Handler

While an application is performing a process written in an event handler, SDK waits for the process to end, suspending its own process as a result.

Therefore, if it takes a while to perform a process written in the handler, the scanning process is suspended until the process written in the handler which is performed ends. This may take long time to scan documents as a result.

Make sure that a process written in the handler ends as quick as possible.

1.3.3 Examples and Notation Conventions in This Chapter

Feature

Describes the outline of the event.

Coding Style

Describes the syntax of the event when coding a program.

Describes codes in accordance with the conventions of Visual Basic .

Example) scancontrolname_ScanToDibEx(ByVal hDib As Stdole.OLE_HANDLE)

Parameters

Describes arguments for the event.

Explanation

Describes the use and function of the property. In addition, notes and restraints regarding correlated properties are also described if necessary.

Target method

Describes a list of methods whose property status is altered by processing this event.

Related Properties

Describes all properties which mutually influence each other.

Sample

Describes simple program samples where necessary.

1.3.4 AutoProfileSelection Notification of the identified forms

Feature

Information about an applied profile and registered form is issued.

Coding Style

```
scancontrolname_AutoProfileSelection( ByVal DistResult As Integer,  
                                         ByVal FormName As String,  
                                         ByVal ProfileName As String)
```

Parameters

DistResult	Result of an identification
FormName	Name of a registered form
ProfileName	Name of an applied profile

Explanation

When "1 - Enabled" has been set for the AutoProfile property and after the ScanToFile/ScanToDibEx/ScanToRawEx event is issued, this event is issued.

Values for DistResult

- 1 An error occurred while identifying a form
- 0 A registered form was detected (accuracy level: high)
- 1 No registered form was detected
- 2 A registered form was detected (accuracy level: low)

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AutoProfile](#)

[AutoProfileSensitivity](#)

Compatibility and Restrictions

This event is issued even if a registered form is not detected.

In this case, the following is issued for FormName and ProfileName.

FormName	Issues an empty string
ProfileName	Issues an empty string

For details about forms and profiles, refer to the Help of the PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver.

Sample

```
[Java]  
public void eventAutoProfileSelection (long distResult, String formName,  
String profileName) {  
    System.out.println("Registered form name: " + formName);  
    System.out.println("Profile name: " + profileName);  
}
```

1.3.5 DetectBarcode Barcode detection notification

Feature

Issued when a barcode is detected.

Coding Style

scancontrolname_ **DetectBarcode**(ByVal ReadCount As Integer,
ByVal BarcodeType As Integer,
ByVal BarcodeText As String)

Parameters

ReadCount	Number of scanned images
BarcodeType	Barcode type
BarcodeText	Barcode identification text

Explanation

This event is issued after the ScanToFile/ScanToDibEx/ScanToRawEx event is issued.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BarcodeDetection](#)

[BarcodeNotDetectionNotice](#)

[BarcodeType](#)

Compatibility and Restrictions

If "True" is set for the BarcodeDetection property, this is issued when a barcode is detected. However, when "True" is set for the BarcodeNotDetectionNotice property, this notification is issued even if a barcode is not detected.

In this case, the following values are issued for the parameters:

ReadCount	The number of scanned images is issued (the same as when a barcode is detected)
BarcodeType	0 is issued
BarcodeText	An empty string is issued

The BarcodeDetection property is disabled if it is not supported on the specific device.

If more than one barcode exists in the barcode recognition area, the order in which barcodes are detected is undetermined.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

*For details on barcodes, refer to the User's Guide for your device.

Sample

```
[Java]
public void eventDetectBarcode(long readCount, long barcodeType, String
barcodeText) {
    System.out.println("Barcode was detected.");
}
```

1.3.6 DetectBarcodeDetail Barcode detail detection notification

Feature

When a barcode is detected, the barcode detail is issued.

Coding Style

```
scancontrolname_DetectBarcodeDetail( ByVal ReadCount As Integer,  
                                       ByVal BarcodeCount As Integer,  
                                       ByVal BarcodeTotalCount As Integer,  
                                       ByVal BarcodeType As Integer,  
                                       ByVal BarcodeTextLength As Integer,  
                                       ByVal BarcodeText As String,  
                                       ByVal BarcodeX As Integer,  
                                       ByVal BarcodeY As Integer,  
                                       ByVal BarcodeRotation As Integer,  
                                       ByVal BarcodeConfidence As Integer)
```

Parameters

ReadCount	Number of scanned images
BarcodeCount	Number of barcodes counted in the scanned image
BarcodeTotalCount	Total number of barcodes detected in the scanned image
BarcodeType	Barcode type
BarcodeTextLength	Barcode text length
BarcodeText	Barcode identification text
BarcodeX	The X coordinate (pixel) of the barcode detection area
BarcodeY	The Y coordinate (pixel) of the barcode detection area
BarcodeRotation	The degrees to rotate the barcode
BarcodeConfidence	(To be implemented in the future)

Explanation

When a barcode is detected, the barcode detail is issued.

The values obtained from BarcodeRotation are "0 - No rotation", "1 - Rotate 90 degrees to the right", "2 - Rotate 180 degrees to the right", "3 - Rotate 270 degrees to the right", and "4 - Rotation degrees unknown, or Two-dimensional code".

This event is Issued after the ScanToFile/ScanToDibEx/ScanToRawEx event is issued.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[BarcodeDetection](#)

[BarcodeNotDetectionNotice](#)

[BarcodeType](#)

Compatibility and Restrictions

If "True" is set for the BarcodeDetection property, this is issued when a barcode is detected.

However, when "True" is set for the BarcodeNotDetectionNotice property, this notification is issued even if a barcode is not detected.

In this case, the following values are issued for the parameters:

ReadCount	The number of scanned images is issued (the same as when a barcode is detected)
BarcodeCount	0 is issued
BarcodeRotation	0 is issued
BarcodeTotalCount	0 is issued
BarcodeText	An empty string is issued
BarcodeTextLength	0 is issued
BarcodeType	0 is issued

BarcodeX 0 is issued
BarcodeY 0 is issued

The BarcodeDetection property is disabled if it is not supported on the specific device.

If more than one barcode exists in the barcode recognition area, the order in which barcodes are detected is undetermined.

Parameter BarcodeConfidence is to be implemented in the future. The value obtained from BarcodeConfidence is indefinite. Do not use the value.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

*For details on barcodes, refer to the User's Guide for your device.

Sample

```
[Java]
public void event DetectBarcodeDetail(long readCount, long
barcodeCount ,long barcodeTotalCount, barcodeType, long
barcodeTextLength, String barcodeText, long barcodeX, long barcodeY, long
barcodeRotation, long barcodeConfidence) {
    System.out.println("Barcode detail was detected.");
}
```

1.3.7 DetectJobSeparator

.... Special Document / Patch Code Document Detection Notification

Feature

Issued when a special document (document with a specific shape) or patch code document is detected.

Coding Style

scancontrolname_**DetectJobSeparator**()

Parameters

N/A

Explanation

When "0 - Special Document" is set for JobControlMode property, this event is Issued before the ScanToFile/ScanToDibEx/ScanToRawEx event is issued.

When "1 - Patch Code Document" is set for JobControlMode property, this event is Issued after the ScanToFile/ScanToDibEx/ScanToRawEx event is issued.

If you have set the JobControl property to "2 - Include and Stop", the JobControlMode property to "1 - Patch Code Document", or the JobControl property to "4 - Exclude and Stop", and if you have specified True for the ScanContinue property and a special document or patch code document is detected, this event is notified after confirmation of continuous read.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[JobControl](#)

[JobControlMode](#)

Compatibility and Restraints

This event is issued when a special document or patch code document is detected while the JobControl property is set to a value other than "0 - None", or job control is set by the driver user interface.

The JobControl property is invalid on devices which do not support the property.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

* For the details of special documents (documents in a particular shape), refer to the User's Guide for your device.

Sample

```
[Java]
public void eventDetectJobSeparator() {
    System.out.println("File transfer was detected.");
}
```

1.3.8 DetectPatchCode Patch code detection notification

Feature

Issued when a patch code is detected.

Coding Style

scancontrolname_ **DetectPatchCode**(ByVal ReadCount As Integer,
ByVal PatchCodeType As Integer)

Parameters

ReadCount	Scanning image count
PatchCodeType	Patch code type

Explanation

This event is issued after the ScanToFile/ScanToDibEx/ScanToRawEx event is issued.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[PatchCodeDetection](#)

Compatibility and Restrictions

If "True" is set for the PatchCodeDetection property, this is issued when a patch code is detected.

The PatchCodeDetection property is disabled if it is not supported on the specific device.

(* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

*For details on patch codes, refer to the User's Guide for your device.

Sample

```
[Java]
public void eventDetectPatchCode(long readCount, long patchCcdeType) {
    System.out.println("Patch code was detected.");
}
```


1.3.9 MultiStreamPropertySetting Setting Properties for Each Image

Feature

Issues an event that sets properties for each image.

Coding Style

scancontrolname_ **MultiStreamPropertySetting** (ByVal StreamCount As Integer,
ByVal PixelType As Integer,
ByVal PageSide As Integer)

Parameters

StreamCount	Output order of images
PixelType	(To be implemented in the future)
PageSide	(To be implemented in the future)

Explanation

This event is issued when the MultiStreamMode property is set to a value other than "0 - OFF". Obtain this event to set properties for each image.

When "1 - 2 Multimage" is specified for the MultiStreamMode property, this event is issued twice. When "2 - 3 Multimage" is specified, this event is issued three times.

To set properties for the 1st image, those properties must be used when the first parameter (StreamCount) in this event is "1".

To set properties for the 2nd image, those properties must be used when the first parameter (StreamCount) in this event is "2".

To set properties for the 3rd image, those properties must be used when the first parameter (StreamCount) in this event is "3".

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[AdjustRGB](#)

[AdjustRGBB](#)

[AdjustRGBG](#)

[AdjustRGBR](#)

[ADTCThreshold](#)

[AutoBright](#)

[Background](#)

[BackgroundSmoothing](#)

[BackgroundSmoothness](#)

[BackgroundThreshold](#)

[Brightness](#)

[CharacterExtraction](#)

[CharacterExtractionMethod](#)

[CharacterThickness](#)

[ColorReproduction](#)

[ColorReproductionBrightness](#)

[ColorReproductionContrast](#)

[ColorReproductionCustomGamma](#)

[ColorReproductionHighlight](#)

[ColorReproductionShadow](#)

[CompressionType](#)

[Contrast](#)

[CustomGamma](#)

[CustomResolution](#)

[DTCSensitivity](#)

[FadingCompensation](#)

[FileType](#) "0 - BMP", "1 - TIFF", "3 - JPEG", "4 - PDF"
[Filter](#)
[FilterSaturationSensitivity](#)
[Gamma](#)
[GammaFile](#)
[Halftone](#)
[HalftoneFile](#)
[Highlight](#)
[MultiStreamMode](#) "1 - 2 Multimage", "2 - 3 Multimage"
[PixelType](#) "0 - Black & White", "1 - Grayscale", "2 - RGB"
[Resolution](#)
[Reverse](#)
[ScanCount](#)
[ScanTo](#) "0 - File"
[SDTCSensitivity](#)
[SEE](#)
[Shadow](#)
[Sharpness](#)
[SimpleSlicePatternRemoval](#)
[sRGB](#)
[Threshold](#)

Compatibility and Restraints

- The PixelType parameter and the PageSide parameter are to be implemented in the future.
The value obtained is indefinite.
- This property does not support Java.

Sample

```
[Visual Basic]
Private Sub Command1_Click()
    'Set a file name for saving an image.
    AxFiScn1.filename = "c:\img\img#####"
    'Set an output method for a scanned image.
    AxFiScn1.ScanTo = 0 'Out put as a file
    'Set a paper feeding method.
    AxFiScn1.PaperSupply = 1 'ADF
    'Out put multiple images.
    AxFiScn1.MultiStreamMode = 1 'Multi image output (two images)
    'Open the scanner.
    AxFiScn1.OpenScanner(Me.Handle.ToInt32)
    'Start scanning documents.
    AxFiScn1.StartScan(Me.Handle.ToInt32)
    'Close the scanner.
    AxFiScn1.CloseScanner (Me.Handle.ToInt32)
End Sub

Private Sub axFiScn1_MultiStreamPropertySetting(sender As Object, e As
AxFiScnLib_DFiScnEvents_MultiStreamPropertySettingEvent) Handles
AxFiScn1.MultiStreamPropertySetting
    If e.streamCount = 1 Then
        AxFiScn1.PixelType = 0      'Pixel type for the 1st image: Binary (Black and
White)
        AxFiScn1.FileType = 1      'File type for the 1st image: TIFF file
        AxFiScn1.Threshold = -2    'Threshold for the 1st image: Dynamic Threshold
(iDTC) binary character mode
        AxFiScn1.PatternRemoval = 1 'Dynamic Threshold (iDTC) binary pattern
removal for the 1st image: Remove (default)
    ElseIf e.streamCount = 2 Then
        AxFiScn1.PixelType = 2      'Pixel type for the 2nd image: RGB color
        AxFiScn1.FileType = 3      'File type for the 1st image: JPEG file
        AxFiScn1.Brightness = 100  'Brightness for the 2nd image
        AxFiScn1.Contrast = 120    'Contrast for the 2nd image
    End If
End Sub
```

For details, refer to the sample source code.

For the Visual C++ sample source code, the MultiStreamMode property and the MultiStreamPropertySetting event are not implemented. Refer to the sample source codes for Visual Basic and Visual C#.

1.3.10 NegotiateCapabilities Capability Configuration Notification

Feature

Configures the TWAIN capability which cannot be configured by this Control.
Issued after the TWAIN capability configuration by this Control.

Coding Style

scancontrolname_ **NegotiateCapabilities** ()

Parameters

N/A

Target method

[StartScan](#)

[SetCapability](#)

[GetCapability](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

Configure capabilities which can be configured by this Control with properties of this Control.

Sample

```
[Java]
    public void eventNegotiateCapabilities() {
        System.out.println("Configures the TWAIN capability .");
    }
```

1.3.11 PagePartition Page break notification

Feature

Issued at a page break.

Coding Style

scancontrolname_**PagePartition**()

Parameters

N/A

Explanation

This event is issued after the ScanToFile/ScanToDibEx/ScanToRawEx/DetectBarcode/DetectBarcodeDetail/DetectJobSeparator/DetectPatchCode/AutoProfileSelection event is issued.

This event will be issued at the end of the events notified for each page.

Example)

Events will be notified as follows when Paper A with two barcodes and Paper B with a patch code are scanned.

ScanToFile	An event related to Paper A
DetectBarcode	An event related to Paper A
DetectBarcodeDetail	An event related to Paper A
PagePartition	An event related to Paper A
ScanToFile	An event related to Paper B
DetectPatchCode	An event related to Paper B
PagePartition	An event related to Paper B

Note: If "True" is set for the ScanContinue property, this event will be issued after a user makes a response in the confirmation window.

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

N/A

Compatibility and Restraints

If the image data is not saved , this event will not occur.

This event will not be issued after the DetectJobSeparator event when the JobControl property is specified with "3 - Exclude and Continue" or "4 - Exclude and Stop" and the last page is a special document (document with a specific shape)/patch code document.

Sample

```
[Java]
public void eventPagePartition() {
    System.out.println("A page break was detected.");
}
```

1.3.12 ScanToDib DIB Handle Consignment

Feature

This event is issued for each page during the scanning process (the StartScan method) when the ScanTo property is set to "1 - DIB Handle."

This is a compatible event. Use the ScanToDibEx event.

Coding Style

scancontrolname_ **ScanToDib**(ByVal hDib As Stdole.OLE_HANDLE)

Parameters

hDib DIB (Device Independent Bitmaps) handle

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ScanTo](#)"Dib Handle"

Compatibility and Restraints

Do not use this event when developing a 64-bit application. Depending on the memory usage amount during the process of running an application, it may cause the application to end abnormally or cause an error in the image data.

This is a compatible event which can be re-compiled when using SDK V2.2L70 or later.

However, you cannot compile this event after a major version upgrade that may occur in the future.

When creating a new application or when fixing a program, use the ScanToDibEx event name instead of ScanToDib.

If the image data is not saved , this event will not occur.

The application is responsible for releasing the DIB (Device Independent Bitmaps) handle (handle to the global memory) obtained from this event.

Release the DIB handle (global memory) when it is no longer necessary when scanning with the ScanTo property set to "1 - DIB Handle." Otherwise, the global memory area available to the system is reduced and may result in the system being unstable.

This Control is not liable for DIB handles (global memory) issued by this event after their issuance. The application is responsible for its use and release afterwards.

This event is not supported by Java.

1.3.13 ScanToDibEx DIB Handle Consignment

Feature

This event is issued for each page during the scanning process (the StartScan method) when the ScanTo property is set to "1 - DIB Handle."

Coding Style

scancontrolname_ **ScanToDibEx** (ByVal hDib As Long)

Parameters

hDib DIB (Device Independent Bitmaps) handle

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ScanTo](#)"1 - DIB Handle"

Compatibility and Restraints

If the image data is not saved , this event will not occur.

The application is responsible for releasing the DIB (Device Independent Bitmaps) handle (handle to the global memory) obtained from this event. Release the DIB handle (global memory) when it is no longer necessary when scanning with the ScanTo property set to "1 - DIB Handle". Otherwise, the global memory area available to the system is reduced and may result in the system being unstable.

This Control is not liable for DIB handles (global memory) issued by this event after their issuance. The application is responsible for its use and release afterwards.

This event is not supported by Java.

The GetBitmapFromDIB method that converts the DIB handle into the Bitmap class is provided for Visual Basic/Visual C#. For details, refer to "[3.6 Bitmap Class Conversion Libraries for Visual Basic/Visual C#](#)".

1.3.14 ScanToFile File Output

Feature

This event is issued for each page during the scanning process (the StartScan method) when the ScanTo property is set to "0 - File".

Coding Style

scancontrolname_**ScanToFile**(ByVal ReadCount As Long, ByVal FileName As String)

Parameters

ReadCount	Scanning image count
FileName	Scanning file name

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ScanTo](#)"File"

Compatibility and Restraints

If the file is not saved, this event will not occur.

Sample

```
[Java]
public void eventScanToFile(long readCount, String fileName) {
    System.out.println("File transfer was detected.");
}
```


1.3.15 ScanToRaw Memory Output

Feature

This event is issued for each page during the scanning process (the StartScan method) when the ScanTo property is set to "2 - Raw Image Handle."

This is a compatible event. Use the ScanToRawEx event.

Coding Style

```
scancontrolname_ScanToRaw(ByVal Resolution As Integer,  
                           ByVal ImageWidth As Long,  
                           ByVal ImageLength As Long,  
                           ByVal BitPerPixel As Integer,  
                           ByVal CompressionType As Integer,  
                           ByVal Size As Long,  
                           ByVal hRaw As Stdole.OLE_HANDLE )
```

Parameters

Resolution	Resolution (dpi)
ImageWidth	Image width (pixel)
ImageLength	Image length (pixel)
BitPerPixel	Number of bits per pixel
CompressionType	Compression type (refer to the CompressionType property)
Size	Data size
Hraw	Image data handle (pointer)

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ScanTo](#)"Raw Image Handle"

[CompressionType](#)

Compatibility and Restraints

Do not use this event when developing a 64-bit application. Depending on the memory usage amount during the process of running an application, it may cause the application to end abnormally or cause an error in the image data.

This is a compatible event which can be re-compiled when using SDK V2.2L70 or later.

However, you cannot compile this event after a major version upgrade that may occur in the future.

When creating a new application or when fixing a program, use the ScanToRawEx event name instead of ScanToRaw.

If the image data is not saved , this event will not occur.

The image data handle (global memory) issued by this event is released by this Control. Therefore, referring to the image data handle (global memory) acquired from this event is not available after this event is finished. The application should assign global memory in this event and use the copy if necessary. Access to the image data handle after this event is finished may result in an abnormal termination of the application, or anomalies of the system, or in the worst case, the system may go down.

Although the RGB color could not be specified for JPEG in V1.0, it has become possible since V2.0L10. Specify "2 - RGB" to the PixelType property, "5 - JPEG" to the CompressionType property, and "3 - JPEG" to the FileType property.

This event is not supported by Java.

1.3.16 ScanToRawEx Memory Output

Feature

This event is issued for each page during the scanning process (the StartScan method) when the ScanTo property is set to "2 - Raw Image Handle."

Coding Style

```
scancontrolname_ScanToRawEx (ByVal Resolution As Integer,  
                                ByVal ImageWidth As Long,  
                                ByVal ImageLength As Long,  
                                ByVal BitPerPixel As Integer,  
                                ByVal CompressionType As Integer,  
                                ByVal Size As Long,  
                                ByVal hRaw As Long )
```

Parameters

Resolution	Resolution (dpi)
ImageWidth	Image width (pixel)
ImageLength	Image length (pixel)
BitPerPixel	Number of bits per pixel
CompressionType	Compression type (refer to the CompressionType property)
Size	Data size
hRaw	Image data handle (pointer)

Target method

[StartScan](#)

Related Properties

[ScanTo](#)"Raw Image Handle"

[CompressionType](#)

Compatibility and Restraints

If the image data is not saved , this event will not occur.

The image data handle (global memory) issued by this event is released by this Control. Therefore, referring to the image data handle (global memory) acquired from this event is not available after this event is finished. The application should assign global memory in this event and use the copy if necessary. Access to the image data handle after this event is finished may result in an abnormal termination of the application, or anomalies of the system, or in the worst case, the system may go down.

Although the RGB color could not be specified for JPEG in V1.0, it has become possible since V2.0L10. Specify "2 - RGB" to the PixelType property, "5 - JPEG" to the CompressionType property, and "3 - JPEG" to the FileType property.

This is not supported by Java.

The GetBitmapFromRAW method that converts the image data handle into the Bitmap class is provided for Visual Basic/Visual C#. For details, refer to "[3.6 Bitmap Class Conversion Libraries for Visual Basic/Visual C#](#)".

1.4 Property Pages

Property Pages is a screen where properties (of frequent use) of Fujitsu Scanner Control are edited. (The following screen is displayed by selecting a Fujitsu Scanner Control property which is pasted on a form in Visual Basic 2012.)

The following items (properties) can be specified in the Property Pages.

The screenshot shows a 'Properties' dialog box with a 'General' tab. It contains the following fields:

- PaperSupply: 1 - ADF
- FileType: 1 - TIFF
- CompressionType: 4 - CCITT G4(2D)
- Jpeg Quality Level: 3 - Level4
- FileName: (empty text box)

Buttons at the bottom: OK, Cancel, Apply.

Paper supply : PaperSupply property

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| 0 - Flatbed | Flatbed |
| 1 - ADF | ADF (scanning the front side) |
| 2 - ADF(Duplex) | ADF(Duplex scan) |
| 3 - ADF(BackSide) | ADF(Back scan) |
| 4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3) | A3 double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL) | Double-letter double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4) | B4 double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping) | Separate outputs of front and back side images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3) | A3 double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 11 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL) | Double-letter double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 12 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4) | B4 double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 13 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread Auto) | Automatic detection double-page spread images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 14 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping All) | Carrier Sheet Size Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 15 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping A4) | A4 Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 16 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping A5) | A5 Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 17 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping A6) | A6 Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |
| 18 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping POST) | POST Card Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet |

- 19 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping B5)
B5 Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 20 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping B6)
B6 Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 21 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping LT)
Letter Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 22 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping CARD_T)
Card Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 23 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping CARD_Y)
Card landscape Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 24 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_ET)
Photo E portrait Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 25 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_EY)
Photo E landscape Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 26 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_LT)
Photo L portrait Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 27 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_LY)
Photo L landscape Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 28 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_LLT)
Photo LL portrait Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 29 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping PHOTO_LLY)
Photo LL landscape Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 30 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Auto)
Automatic detection Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 31 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Custom)
Custom Clipping Front images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 32 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex All)
Carrier Sheet Size Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 33 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex A4)
A4 Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 34 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex A5)
A5 Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 35 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex A6)
A6 Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 36 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex POST)
POST Card Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 37 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex B5)
B5 Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 38 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex B6)
B6 Clipping Duplex Images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 39 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex LT)
Letter Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 40 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex CARD_T)
Card Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 41 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex CARD_Y)
Card landscape Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 42 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_ET)
Photo E portrait Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 43 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_EY)
Photo E landscape Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 44 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_LT)
Photo L portrait Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 45 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_LY)
Photo L landscape Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 46 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_LLT)
Photo LL portrait Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 47 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex PHOTO_LLY)
Photo LL landscape Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet

- 48 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Auto)
Automatic detection Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet
- 49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)
Custom Clipping Duplex images scanned using the Carrier Sheet


File type : FileType property

- | | |
|--------------------------|----------------------|
| 0 - BMP | Windows Bitmap file |
| 1 - TIFF | TIFF file |
| 2 - Multipage TIFF | Multipage TIFF files |
| 3 - JPEG | JPEG file |
| 4 - PDF | PDF file |
| 5 - Multipage PDF | Multipage PDF files |
| 6 - Multi Image Output | Multi-Image output |
| 7 - Auto Color Detection | Auto color detection |

Compression type : CompressionType property

- | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 0 - No Compress | No (not compressing) |
| 1 - CCITT G3(1D) | MH compression |
| 2 - CCITT G3(2D) Kfactor = 2 | MR compression K Factor 2 |
| 3 - CCITT G3(2D) Kfactor = 4 | MR compression K Factor 4 |
| 4 - CCITT G4 | MMR compression |
| 5 - JPEG | JPEG compression |
| 6 - Old JPEG | Old JPEG compression |

JPEG quality level : JpegQuality property

- | | | |
|------------|---------------------|------------------------------------|
| 0 - Level1 | Compression level 1 | (Size given top priority) |
| 1 - Level2 | Compression level 2 | |
| 2 - Level3 | Compression level 3 | |
| 3 - Level4 | Compression level 4 | |
| 4 - Level5 | Compression level 5 | |
| 5 - Level6 | Compression level 6 | |
| 6 - Level7 | Compression level 7 | (Image quality given top priority) |
- 

File name : FileName property

File name for saving the image

2. Samples

Sample source codes and executable forms of Visual Basic2012, Visual C++ 2012, Visual C# 2012 and Java are included in this product.

This version includes samples for using Windows control (ActiveX Control) to scan an image data. All samples are stored in the following location.

<Installation folder> \ Sample \

These samples are supplemental references for this document. Use these samples or partly modified samples to confirm operations. However, Fujitsu is not liable for any operational results of the samples.

To use the development environment for Visual Studio 2012, Visual Studio 2013, Visual Studio 2015, Visual Studio 2017 or Visual Studio 2019, use the samples for Visual Basic 2012, Visual C++ 2012, or Visual C# 2012.

Microsoft .Net Framework 4.0 is required to run the samples for Visual Basic 2012 and Visual C# 2012. Install Microsoft .NET Framework 4.0 in advance.

Microsoft Runtime Library 2012 is required to run the samples for Visual C++ 2012. Install Microsoft Runtime Library 2012 in advance.

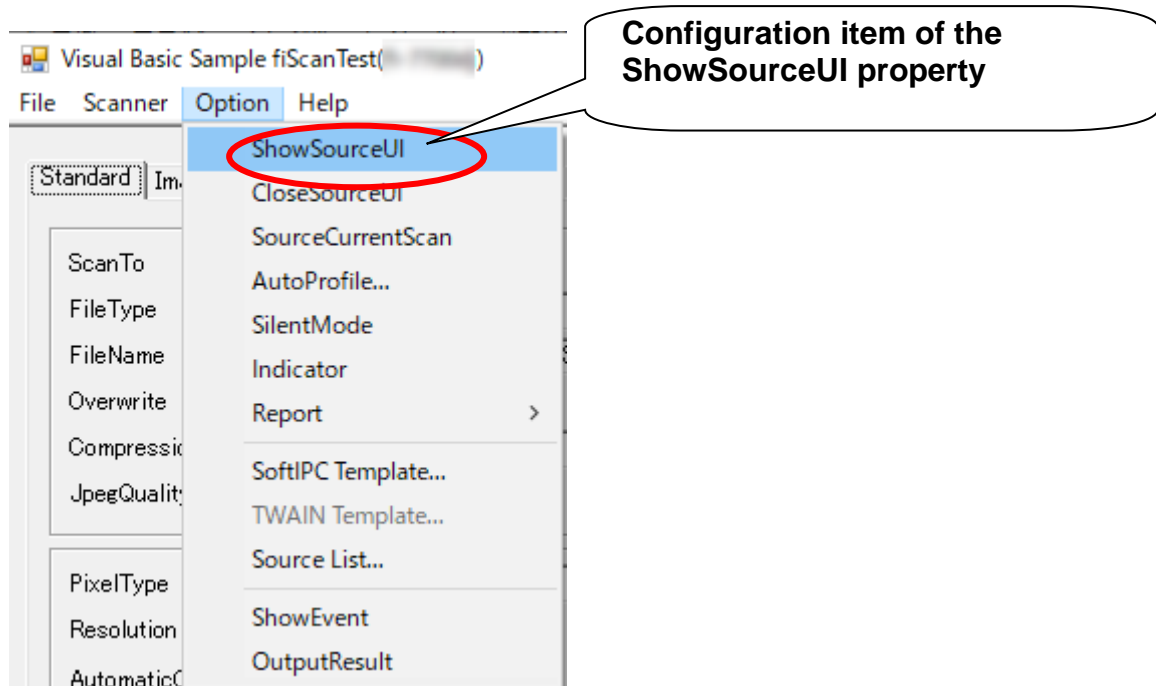
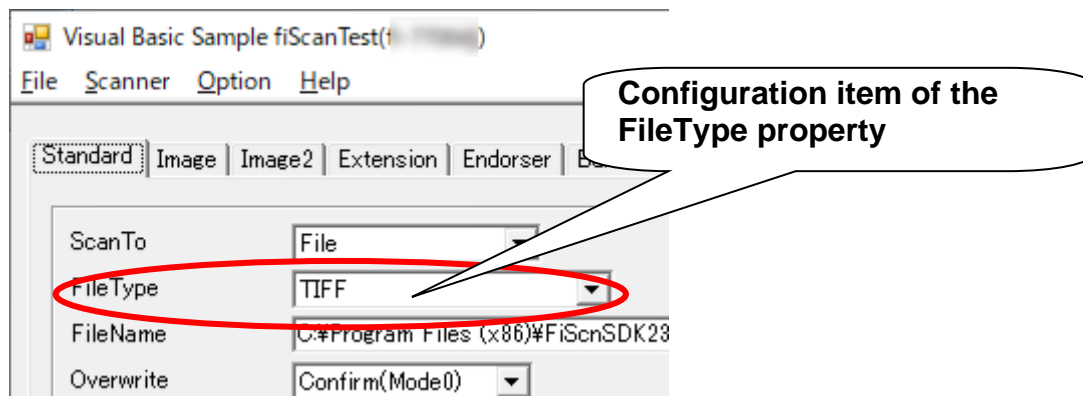
2.1 Basic Operations

- (1) As the sample starts, it opens the scanner with the [OpenScanner](#) method.
- (2) When [StartScan] is selected from the sample's [Scanner] menu, or the [Scan] button is clicked, it starts scanning with the [StartScan](#) method.
- (3) When [Exit] is selected from the sample's [File] menu, or the [Exit] button is clicked, it closes scanner with the [CloseScanner](#) method.
- (4) When the [Reset] button in the sample is clicked, it returns to the initial configuration status.
- (5) When the [PSIP Default] button in the sample is clicked, the default values for PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver will be set.

2.2 Item Names

Item names within the sample, under the [Scanner] and [Option] menus are corresponding to the property names and method names of Fujitsu Scanner Control.

However, the [SoftlPC Template], [TWAIN Template], [Source List], and [Output Result] items under the [Option] menu are corresponding to neither property names nor method names. (Refer to "2.3 SoftlPC Template", "2.4 TWAIN Template", "2.5 Source List", and "2.6 Output Result".)



2.3 SoftIPC Template

A dialog box with a list of templates for the "Image Processing Software Option" is displayed to allow the user to select a template when [SoftIPC Template] under the [Option] menu is clicked. This dialog box is displayed using the following methods.

A separate product "Image Processing Software Option" must be installed to use this function.

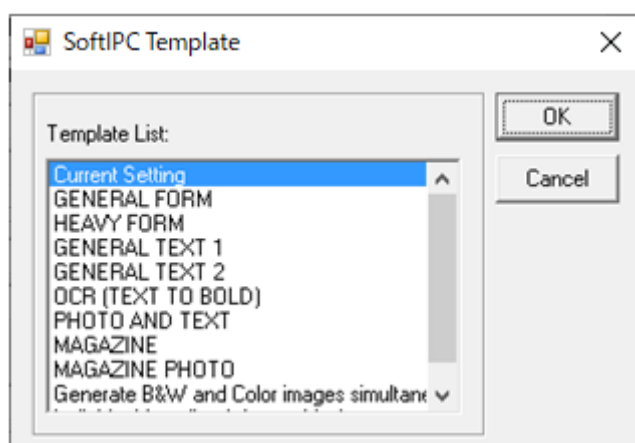
Used Methods

[GetSlpcTemplateCount](#)

[GetSlpcTemplateName](#)

[GetSlpcTemplateSelect](#)

[SetSlpcTemplateSelect](#)



2.4 TWAIN Template

A dialog box with a list of templates for the "TWAIN" is displayed to allow the user to select a template when [TWAIN Template] under the [Option] menu is clicked. This dialog box is displayed using the following methods.

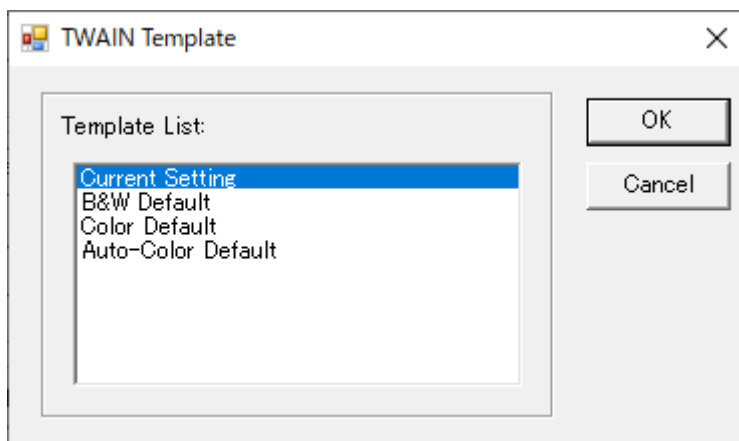
Used Methods

[GetTWAINTemplateCount](#)

[GetTWAINTemplateName](#)

[GetTWAINTemplateSelect](#)

[SetTWAINTemplateSelect](#)



2.5 Source List

A dialog box with a list of data source names is displayed to allow the user to select a data source when [Source List] under the [Option] menu is clicked.

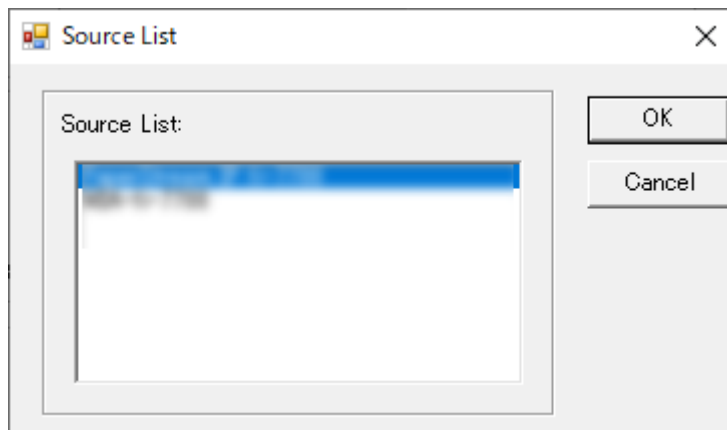
Used Methods

[GetSourceCount](#)

[GetSourceName](#)

[GetSourceSelect](#)

[SelectSourceName](#)



2.6 Output Result

Event detection results will be stored with the file name "OutputResult.txt" to where the sample is stored when [Output Result] under the [Option] menu is clicked.

2.7 Visual Basic / Visual C# Sample Screen

Visual Basic samples / Visual C# samples consist of the Standard, Image, Image2, Extension, Endorser, Barcode, PatchCode, EdgeFiller, 1stStream, 2ndStream and 3rdStream screens. Configure items by switching between screens.

The screenshot shown below is for reference purposes only. The actual sample screen may look different.

Standard tab

The screenshot shows the 'Standard' tab of the 'Visual Basic Sample fiScanTest' application. The window has a menu bar with 'File', 'Scanner', 'Option', and 'Help'. Below the menu bar is a tabbed interface with tabs for 'Standard', 'Image', 'Image2', 'Extension', 'Endorser', 'Barcode', 'PatchCode', 'EdgeFiller', '1stStream', '2ndStream', and '3rdStream'. The 'Standard' tab is active, displaying various configuration options for scanning. On the right side of the window, there are buttons for 'Scan', 'Exit', 'Reset', 'PSIP Default', 'CheckADF', and 'Serial No.'. At the bottom left, a status bar indicates '0 枚読み取りました。' (0 sheets loaded).

ScanTo	File	ScanMode	Normal Scan
FileType	TIFF	ScanContinue	<input type="checkbox"/> ScanContinueMode Manual
FileName	C:\Program Files (x86)\FiScnSDK23\Sample\ScanTest\VB 2010\bin\image####		
Overwrite	Confirm(Mode0)	FileCounter	2 (-1,0-65535)
CompressionType	CCITT G4	MultiStreamMode	OFF
JpegQuality	Level4		
PixelType	Black&White	AutoBright	<input type="checkbox"/>
Resolution	300dpi	CustomResolution	300 (50-600dpi)
AutomaticColorSensitivity	0 (-7 ~ 7)		
AutomaticColorBackground	Include Background Color		
ScanCount	-1 (-1, 1-32767)	Unit	Inches
PaperSupply	ADF		
PaperSize	A4(210x297mm)	UndefinedScanning	<input type="checkbox"/> LongPage <input type="checkbox"/>
Orientation	Portrait	BackgroundColor	OFF
CustomPaperWidth	8.268 inch	CustomPaperLength	11.693 inch
RegionLeft	0.000 inch	RegionTop	0.000 inch
RegionWidth	0.000 inch	RegionLength	0.000 inch
		AutomaticSenseMedium	<input type="checkbox"/>
		BackgroundSmoothing	None
		BackgroundSmoothness	5 (0-10)

Cautions

- 1) The [File] item only is supported among the ScanTo items.
- 2) When [File] or [Display&File] is specified in the [Report] sub-menu under the [Option] menu, the ReportFile is stored where samples are stored, with a file name "Report.txt."

Image tab

Visual Basic Sample fiScanTest

File Scanner Option Help

Standard **Image** Image2 Extension Endorser Barcode PatchCode EdgeFiller 1stStream 2ndStream 3rdStream

Reverse	<input type="checkbox"/>	Mirroring	<input type="checkbox"/>	Rotation	None
Brightness	128 (1-255)	Background	OFF	Outline	None
Contrast	128 (1-255)	AutoSeparation	OFF	SEE	OFF
Threshold	128 (-2,-1,0-255)	DTCsensitivity	50 (0-100)	BackgroundThreshold	50 (0-100)
Highlight	230 (1-255)	CharacterThickness	5 (0-10)	SDTCsensitivity	2 (1-3)
Shadow	10 (0-254)	NoiseRejection	0 (0-20)	ADTCThreshold	83 (1-255)
Sharpness	None	FadingCompensation	0 (0-5)	sRGB	<input type="checkbox"/>
PunchHoleRemoval	Do not remove	CharacterExtraction	<input type="checkbox"/>	PatternRemoval	Standard
PunchHoleRemovalMode	Standard	ReversedTypeExtraction	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	HalftoneRemoval	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Halftone	None			StampRemoval	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Gamma	None				
CustomGamma	2.2 (0.1-10.0)	VerticalLineReduction	<input type="checkbox"/>	SimpleSlicePatternRemoval	<input type="checkbox"/>

ThresholdCurve: Curve1
 NoiseRemoval: None
 PreFiltering: ☐
 Smoothing: ☐

0 枚読み取りました。

Scan
Exit
Reset
PSIP Default
CheckADF
Serial No.

This area can be specified when the PixelType item is set to [0 - Black & White], the Threshold item is set to [0], and the Halftone item is set to [None].

Image2 tab

Visual Basic Sample fiScanTest

FileScannerOptionHelp

StandardImageImage2ExtensionEndorserBarcodePatchCodeEdgeFiller1stStream2ndStream3rdStream

ColorReproductionContrastAdjustRGB

ColorReproductionBrightness128 (1-255)AdjustRGBR128 (1-255)

ColorReproductionContrast128 (1-255)AdjustRGBG128 (1-255)

ColorReproductionShadow0 (0-254)AdjustRGBB128 (1-255)

ColorReproductionHighlight255 (1-255)

ColorReproductionCustomGamma1 (0.1-10.0)

Scan

Exit

Reset

PSIP Default

CheckADF

Serial No.

0枚読み取りました。

Extension tab

Visual Basic Sample fiScanTest

File Scanner Option Help

Standard Image Image2 **Extension** Endorser Barcode PatchCode EdgeFiller 1stStream 2ndStream 3rdStream

JobControl	None	Deskew	OFF
JobControlMode	Special Document	DeskewBackground	Background
Binding	Side	DeskewMode	ON
MultiFeed	None	MultiFeedNotice	<input type="checkbox"/>
Filter	Green		
FilterSaturationSensitivity	50 (0-100)		
BlankPageSkip	0 (0-11)	BlankPageSkipMode	Sensitivity
BlankPageNotice	OFF	BlankPageSkipTabPage	All Pages
SkipWhitePage	0 (0-50)	BlankPageIgnoreAreaSize	16 (0-16)
SkipBlackPage	0 (0-50)		
AutoBorderDetection	<input type="checkbox"/>	FrontBackMergingEnabled	<input type="checkbox"/>
OverScan	OFF	FrontBackMergingLocation	Right
AIQCNotice	<input type="checkbox"/>	FrontBackMergingRotation	None
CropPriority	Speed	FrontBackMergingTarget	All
CropMarginSize	0 (-5.0 - 5.0)	FrontBackMergingTargetMode	Custom
SelectOutputSize	Margin	FrontBackMergingTargetSize	1.000 inch
MultiFeedModeChangeSize	0.000 inch		
LengthDetection	None	DivideLongPage	<input type="checkbox"/>
HwCompression	<input type="checkbox"/>	PaperProtection	Driver Setting
FrontBackDetection	None		

0 枚読み取りました。

Scan
Exit
Reset
PSIP Default
CheckADF
Serial No.

Endorser tab

Visual Basic Sample fiScanTest ()

File Scanner Option Help

Standard | Image | Image2 | Extension | **Endorser** | Barcode | PatchCode | EdgeFilter | ... | 3rdStream

Endorser ☐

EndorserDialog OFF

EndorserCounter 0 (-1, 0-99999999)

EndorserString

EndorserOffset 0.000 inch

EndorserDirection ToUnder

EndorserCountStep 1Step

EndorserCountDirection Add

EndorserFont Horizontal

SynchronizationDigitalEndorser ☐

DigitalEndorser ☐

DigitalEndorserCounter 0 (-1, 0-99999999)

DigitalEndorserString

DigitalEndorserXOffset 0.000 inch

DigitalEndorserYOffset 0.000 inch

DigitalEndorserDirection Top to Bottom

DigitalEndorserCountStep 1Step

DigitalEndorserCountDirection Add

Scan

Exit

Reset

PSIP Default

CheckADF

Serial No.

0 枚読み取りました。

The Endorser associated items can be specified when the Endorser check box is checked.

The DigitalEndorser associated items can be specified when the DigitalEndorser check box is checked.

Barcode tab

Visual Basic Sample fiScanTest()

File Scanner Option Help

Standard Image Image2 Extension Endorser Barcode PatchCode

BarcodeDetection ☐ BarcodeNotDetectionNotice ☐

BarcodeDirection Horizontal & Vertical

BarcodeRegionLeft 0.000 inch BarcodeRegionTop 0.000 inch

BarcodeRegionWidth 0.000 inch BarcodeRegionLength 0.000 inch

BarcodeMaxSearchPriorities 1 (1-20)

Barcode Type

EAN 8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	EAN 13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Code 3 of 9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Code 128	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ITF	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	UPC-A	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Codabar	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PDF417	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	QR Code	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Data Matrix	<input type="checkbox"/>	Aztec Code	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Scan

Exit

Reset

PSIP Default

CheckADF

Serial No.

0 枚読み取りました。

PatchCode tab

Visual Basic Sample fiScanTest()

FileScannerOptionHelp

StandardImageImage2ExtensionEndorserBarcodePatchCodeEdgeFiller1stStream2ndStream3rdStream

PatchCodeDetection☐

PatchCodeDirectionVertical

PatchCodeType

Patch 1	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Patch 2	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Patch 3	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Patch 4	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Patch T	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Patch 6	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Scan

Exit

Reset

PSIP Default

CheckADF

Serial No.

0枚読み取りました。

296

EdgeFiller tab

Visual Basic Sample fiScanTest()

File Scanner Option Help

Standard Image Image2 Extension Endorser Barcode PatchCode Edge

EdgeFiller Off

EdgeFillerTop 0.000 inch EdgeFillerBottom 0.000 inch

EdgeFillerLeft 0.000 inch EdgeFillerRight 0.000 inch

EdgeRepair ☐

Reset

PSIP Default

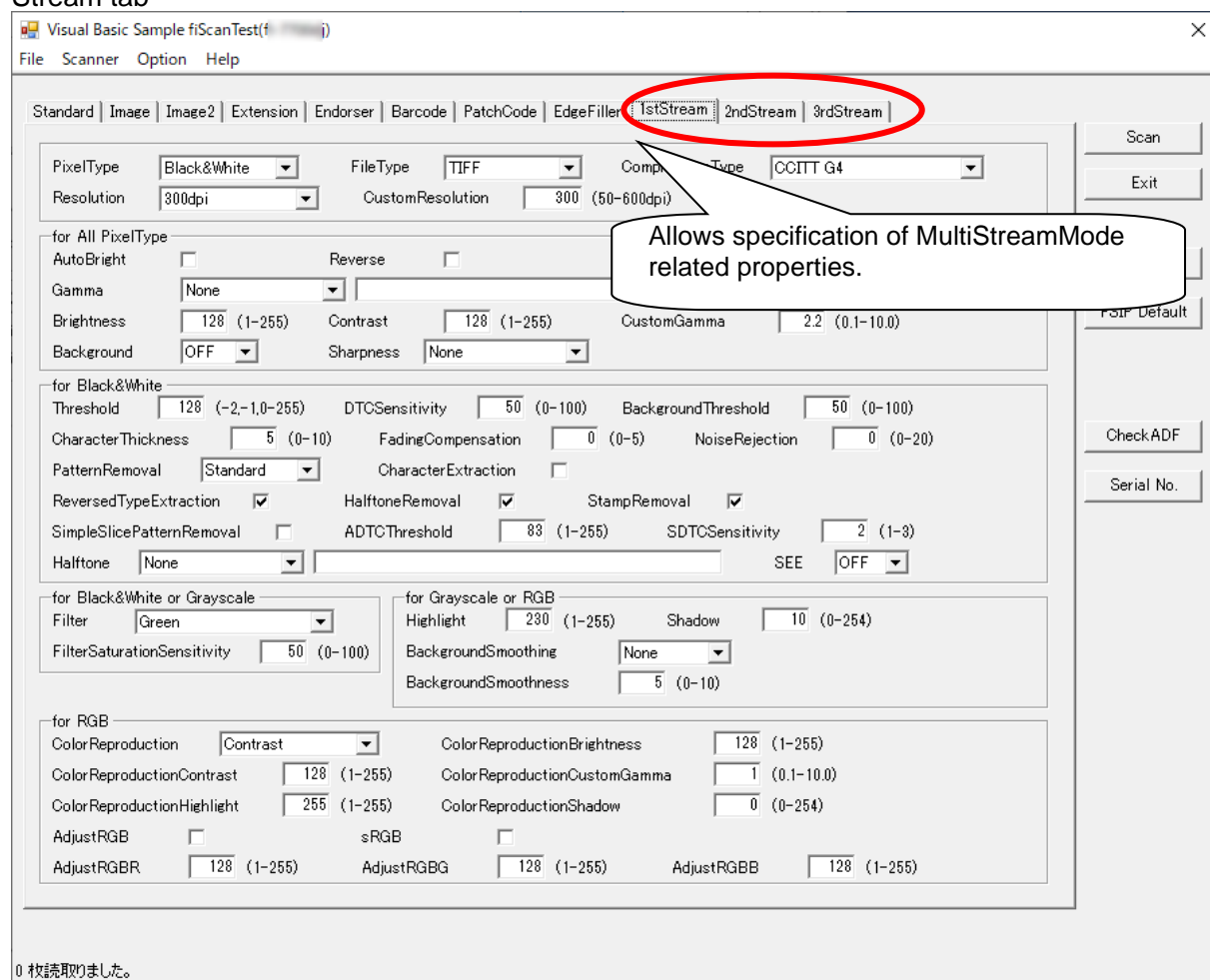
CheckADF

Serial No.

0 枚読み取りました。

The EdgeFiller related items can be specified when the EdgeFiller item is not set to OFF.

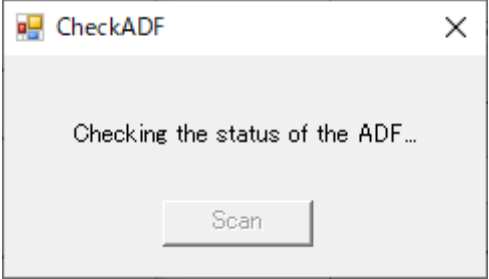
Stream tab



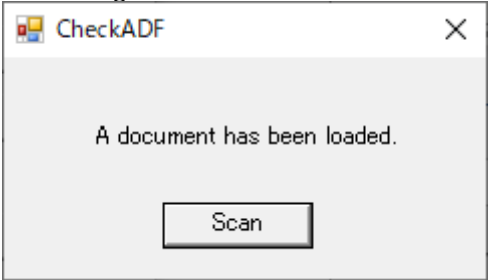
Option > AutoProfile...



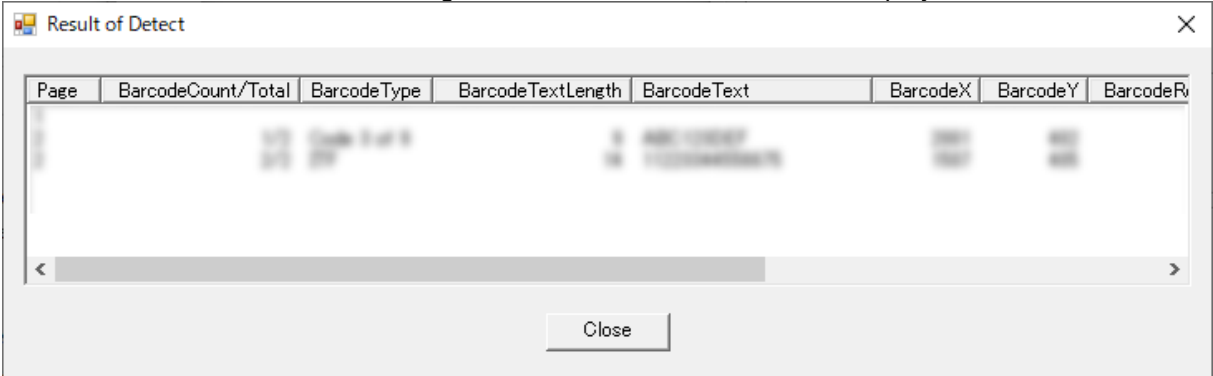
When the [Check ADF] button is clicked, the Check ADF dialog box opens, and monitoring is started for whether a document is loaded in the ADF.



Monitoring is canceled if a document is loaded in the ADF.



After scanning is completed, the DetectBarcodeDetail and DetectPatchCode event detection results and AIQCRresult and BlankPageResult and MultiFeedResult are displayed.



2.8 Visual C++ Sample Screen

Configuration of the Image, Endorser, Extension, Barcode, PatchCode and EdgeFiller items for Visual C++ samples is performed by opening an appropriate dialog box.

The screenshot shown below is for reference purposes only. The actual sample screen may look different.

Visual C++ Sample fiScanTest

File Scanner Option Help

ScanTo	File	ScanMode	Normal Scan
FileType	TIFF	ScanContinue	<input type="checkbox"/> ScanContinueMode Manual
FileName	C:\Program Files (x86)\FiScnSDK23\Sample\ScanTest\VC 2010\Release\image####		
Overwrite	Confirm(Mode0)	FileCounter	2 (-1, 0-65535)
CompressionType	CCITT G4	JpegQuality	Level4

PaperSupply	ADF	ScanCount	-1 (-1, 1-32767)
AutomaticSenseMedium	<input type="checkbox"/>	CustomPaperWidth	8.268 inch
PaperSize	A4(210x297mm)	CustomPaperLength	11.69 inch
Orientation	PORTRAIT	RegionLeft	0 inch
BackgroundColor	OFF	RegionTop	0 inch
BackgroundSmoothing	None	RegionWidth	0 inch
		RegionLength	0 inch
		UndefinedScanning	<input type="checkbox"/> Unit Inches
		BackgroundSmoothness	5 (0-10) LongPage <input type="checkbox"/>

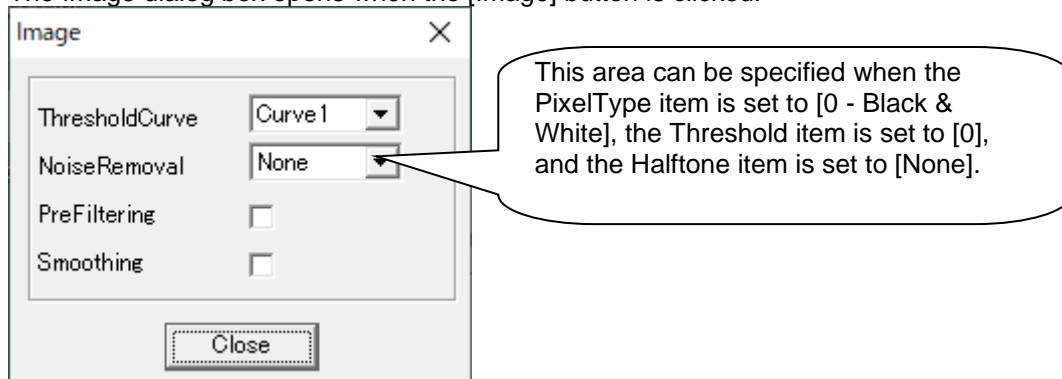
PixelType	Black&White	AutomaticColorBackground	Include Background Color
Resolution	300dpi	CustomResolution	300 (50-600dpi) Reverse <input type="checkbox"/> Mirroring <input type="checkbox"/>
AutoBright	<input type="checkbox"/>	Rotation	None
Brightness	128 (1-255)	AutomaticColorSensitivity	0 (-7 - 7)
Contrast	128 (1-255)	Background	OFF
Threshold	128 (-2-10-255)	AutoSeparation	OFF
Highlight	230 (1-255)	SEE	OFF
Shadow	10 (0-254)	DTCsensitivity	50 (0-100)
Sharpness	None	BackgroundThreshold	50 (0-100)
PunchHoleRemoval	Do not remove	SDTCsensitivity	2 (1-3)
PunchHoleRemovalMode	Standard	ADTCThreshold	83 (1-255)
Halftone	None	sRGB	<input type="checkbox"/>
Gamma	None	PatternRemoval	Standard
CustomGamma	2.2 (0.1-10.0)	CharacterExtraction	<input type="checkbox"/>
		ReversedTypeExtraction	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
		HalftoneRemoval	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
		StampRemoval	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
		HalftoneFile	
		GammaFile	
		VerticalLineReduction	<input type="checkbox"/>
		SimpleSlicePatternRemoval	<input type="checkbox"/>

1枚読取りました。

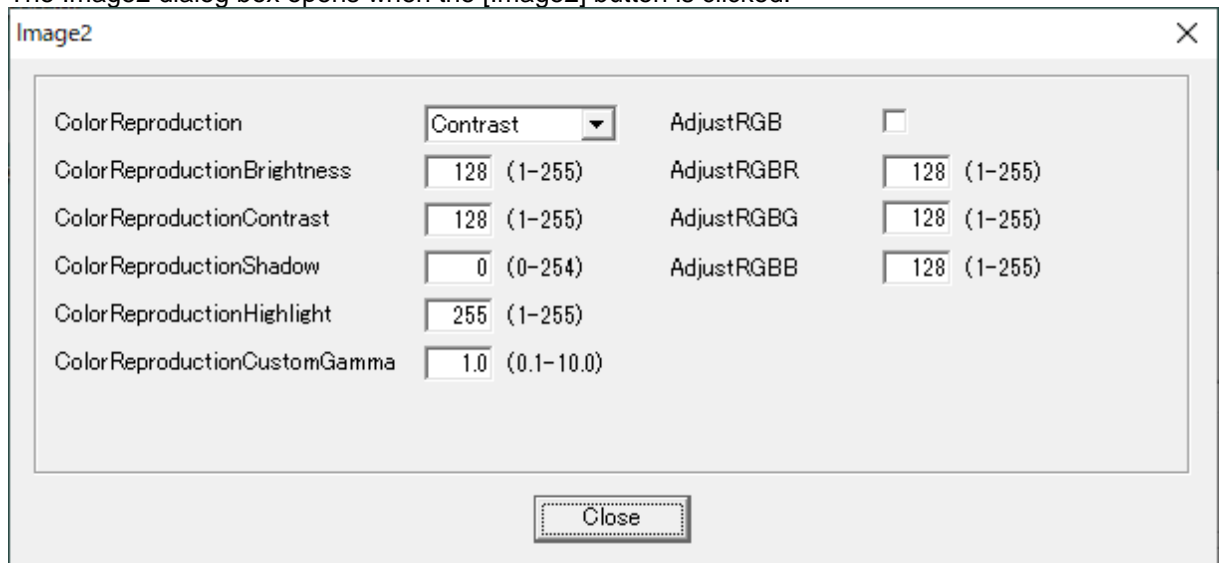
Cautions

- 1) If a scan is performed when [Dib Handle] or [Raw Image Handle] is specified for the ScanTo item, this sample stores the data in the same location as the [File] specification for the ScanTo item, with the same file name, in a Windows bitmap format.
- 2) When [File] or [Display&File] is specified in the [Report] sub-menu under the [Option] menu, the ReportFile is stored where samples are stored, with a file name "Report.txt."

The Image dialog box opens when the [Image] button is clicked.



The Image2 dialog box opens when the [Image2] button is clicked.



The Endorser dialog box opens when the [Endorser] button is clicked.

Endorser

The Endorser associated items can be specified when the Endorser check box is checked.

Endorser ☒

EndorserDialog OFF

EndorserCounter 0 (-1,0-99999999)

EndorserString

EndorserOffset 0 inch

EndorserDirection To Under

EndorserCountStep 1Step

EndorserCountDirection Add

EndorserFont Horizontal

SynchronizationDigitalEndorser ☐

The DigitalEndorser associated items can be specified when the DigitalEndorser check box is checked.

DigitalEndorser ☒

DigitalEndorserCounter 0 (-1,0-99999999)

DigitalEndorserString

DigitalEndorserXOffset 0 inch

DigitalEndorserYOffset 0 inch

DigitalEndorserDirection Top to Bottom

DigitalEndorserCountStep 1Step

DigitalEndorserCountDirection Add

Close

The Extension dialog box opens when the [Extension] button is clicked.

Extension

JobControl

None

JobControlMode

Special Document

Binding

Side

MultiFeed

None

Filter

Green

FilterSaturationSensitivity

50 (0-100)

AutoBorderDetection

☐

OverScan

OFF

AIQCNotice

☐

CropPriority

Speed

CropMarginSize

0 (-5.0 - 5.0)

SelectOutputSize

Margin

MultiFeedModeChangeSize

0 inch

MultiFeedNotice

☐

LengthDetection

None

HwCompression

☐

FrontBackDetection

None

Deskew

OFF

DeskewBackground

Background

DeskewMode

ON

BlankPageSkip

0 (0-11)

BlankPageSkipMode

Sensitivity

BlankPageNotice

OFF

BlankPageSkipTabPage

All Pages

BlankPageIgnoreAreaSize

16 (0-16)

SkipWhitePage

0 (0-50)

SkipBlackPage

0 (0-50)

FrontBackMergingEnabled

☐

FrontBackMergingLocation

Right

FrontBackMergingRotation

None

FrontBackMergingTarget

All

FrontBackMergingTargetMode

Custom

FrontBackMergingTargetSize

1.000 inch

DivideLongPage

☐

PaperProtection

Driver Setting

Close

The Barcode dialog box opens when the [Barcode] button is clicked.

The Barcode dialog box is shown with the following settings:

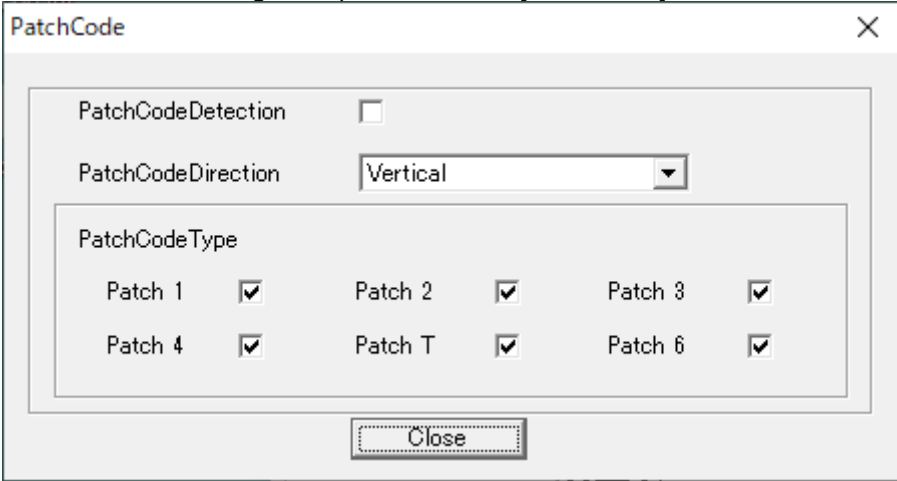
- BarcodeDetection:** ☒ (A callout bubble points to this checkbox with the text: "The BarcodeDetection associated items can be specified when the Barcode check box is checked.")
- BarcodeDirection:** Horizontal & Vertical
- BarcodeRegionLeft:** 0 inch
- BarcodeRegionTop:** 0 inch
- BarcodeRegionWidth:** 0 inch
- BarcodeRegionLength:** 0 inch
- BarcodeMaxSearchPriorities:** 1 (1-20)

BarcodeType

EAN 8	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	EAN 13	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	Code 3 of 9	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Code 128	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	ITF	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	UPC-A	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Codabar	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	PDF417	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	QR Code	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Data Matrix	<input type="checkbox"/>	Aztec Code	<input type="checkbox"/>		

Close

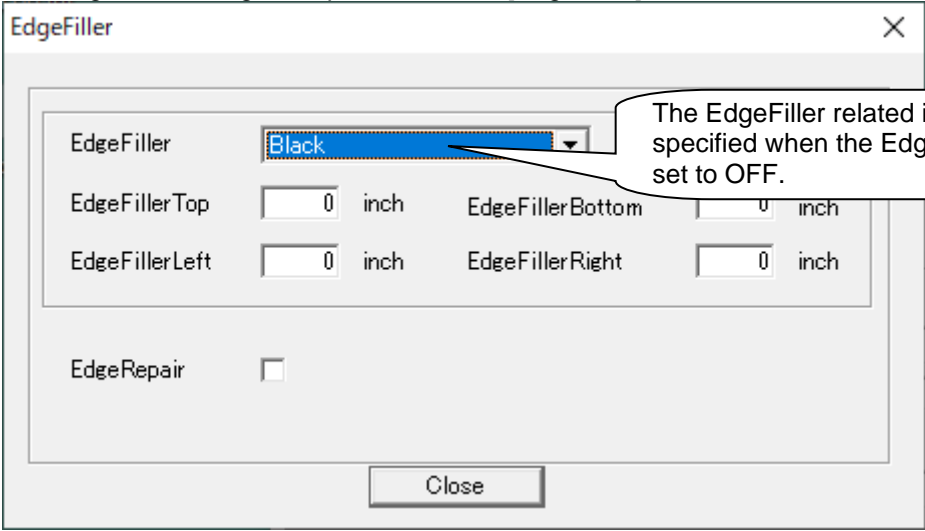
The PatchCode dialog box opens when the [PatchCode] button is clicked.



The PatchCode dialog box is titled "PatchCode" and has a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains the following controls:

- PatchCodeDetection: ☐
- PatchCodeDirection: A dropdown menu currently showing "Vertical".
- PatchCodeType: A group box containing six checkboxes, all of which are checked:
 - Patch 1
 - Patch 2
 - Patch 3
 - Patch 4
 - Patch T
 - Patch 6
- Close: A button at the bottom center.

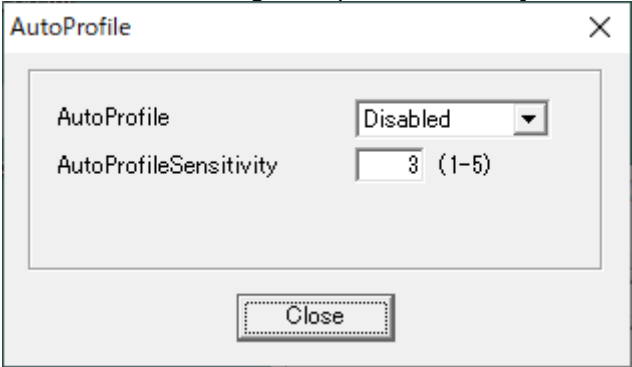
The EdgeFiller dialog box opens when the [EdgeFiller] button is clicked.



The EdgeFiller dialog box is titled "EdgeFiller" and has a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains the following controls:

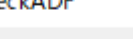
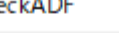
- EdgeFiller: A color selection dropdown menu currently showing "Black". A callout bubble points to this dropdown with the text: "The EdgeFiller related items can be specified when the EdgeFiller item is not set to OFF."
- EdgeFillerTop: A text input field with "0" and the unit "inch".
- EdgeFillerBottom: A text input field with "0" and the unit "inch".
- EdgeFillerLeft: A text input field with "0" and the unit "inch".
- EdgeFillerRight: A text input field with "0" and the unit "inch".
- EdgeRepair: ☐
- Close: A button at the bottom center.

The AutoProfile dialog box opens when the [AutoProfile...] is selected from the [Option] menu.



The AutoProfile dialog box is titled "AutoProfile" and has a close button (X) in the top right corner. It contains the following controls:

- AutoProfile: A dropdown menu currently showing "Disabled".
- AutoProfileSensitivity: A text input field with "3" and the range "(1-5)".
- Close: A button at the bottom center.



Result of Detect										
Page	BarcodeCount/Total	BarcodeType	BarcodeTextLength	BarcodeText	BarcodeX	BarcodeY	BarcodeRotation	Patch	AIQC	Blar
1/1	1/1	1D Barcode	14	1000000000000000	1000	1000	0	Patch 1	1.0	1.0

2.9 Java Sample Program

There is no setup screen for a Java sample.

To set properties, use the following xml file.

<Installation folder> \ ScanTest \ Java \ FiscnProperties.xml

* Specify the correct path for FileName of FiscnProperties.xml.

To run a Java sample,

(1) Start a command prompt, and run the following command.

cd /d "<Installation folder>"

(2) In the command prompt, run the following command.

java -classpath "<Installation folder> \ Sample \ ScanTest \ Java";"<Installation folder> \ Fiscn.jar" com.fujitsu.pfu.fiscn.sdksample.FiscnSampleApp "<Installation folder> \ Sample \ ScanTest \ Java \ FiscnProperties.xml"

-classpath : Specify jar files or class directories necessary to run the Java sample.
Use a semi colon (;) to separate multiple paths.

Second parameter : Specify an execution class.

Third parameter : Specify an execution parameter.

3. Appendix

3.1 Error code and how to fix error

The following describes error countermeasures and attributes for each error number.

■: Errors caused by hardware (critical), □: Errors caused by hardware (non-critical)

●: Errors caused by software (critical), ○: Errors caused by software (non-critical)

Error Number	Countermeasures	Atr.
0x00000000	EC_SUCCESS	-
0x00000001	EC_NOT_READY (Device is not ready)	□
0x00000002	EC_DETECT_SPECIAL_PAPER (Special document or patch code document was detected.)	□
0x00000003	EC_JAM (A paper jam has occurred)	□
0x00000004	EC_OPENED_ADFCOVER (ADF cover, or endorser / imprinter cover is open)	□
0x00000005	EC_NOT_ENOUGH_PAPER (No more documents left)	□
0x00000006	EC_RUNDOWN_FUSE_FBMOTOR (Motor fuse for FB is blown)	■
0x00000007	EC_RUNDOWN_FUSE_ADFMOTOR (Motor fuse for ADF is blown)	■
0x00000008	EC_RUNDOWN_FUSE_HEATER (Fuse for heater is blown)	■
0x00000009	EC_RUNDOWN_FUSE_LAMP (Fuse for lamp is blown)	■
0x0000000A	EC_RUNDOWN_FUSE_ENDORSER (Fuse for Endorser or Imprinter is blown)	■
0x0000000B	EC_RUNDOWN_SYSTEM (Abnormal device drive system)	■
0x0000000C	EC_ABNORMAL_LIGHTLEVEL (Abnormal light level)	■
0x0000000D	EC_CANNOT_CONTROL_SPC (Internal target error)	■
0x0000000E	EC_ABNORMAL_ENDORSER (Endorser / Imprinter error)	■

Error Number		Countermeasures	Atr.
0x0000000F	EC_INVALID_COMMAND (Invalid command)	An illegal process in the driver or control, or an unknown device failure. Restart the computer and scanner device and try again.	● ■
0x00000010	EC_INVALID_CDB_FIELD (Unknown code in the CDB field)	An illegal process in the driver or control, or an unknown device failure. Restart the computer and scanner device and try again.	● ■
0x00000011	EC_UNSUPPORTED_LOGICAL_UNIT (Unsupported logical unit)	An illegal process in the driver or control, or an unknown device failure. Restart the computer and scanner device and try again.	● ■
0x00000012	EC_INVALID_PARAM_FIELD (Invalid parameter field)	An illegal process in the driver or control, or an unknown device failure. Restart the computer and scanner device and try again.	● ■
0x00000013	EC_ABNORMAL_WINDOWID (Window ID combination error)	An illegal process in the driver or control, or an unknown device failure. Restart the computer and scanner device and try again.	● ■
0x00000014	EC_ERROR_SEQUENCE (Sequence error)	An illegal process in the driver or control, or an unknown device failure. Restart the computer and scanner device and try again.	● ■
0x00000015	EC_UNIT_ATTENTION (Device is being reset)	Initialization in progress. Try again after the device becomes ready.	□
0x00000016	EC_ERROR_TRANSFER_IMAGE (Image transfer error)	The internal memory of the device may be insufficient. Reduce the scan image size and try again.	□ ○
0x00000017	EC_ERROR_SCSI_PARITY (SCSI parity error)	The interface section (SCSI card, SCSI cable, etc.) of the device may have failed. Check the interface section.	■
0x00000018	EC_ERROR_LOAD_SM (Source manager load error)	The TWAIN driver may not be installed correctly. Check if the TWAIN driver is installed correctly.	○
0x00000019	EC_ERROR_OPEN_SM (Source manager open error)	The TWAIN driver may not be installed correctly. Check if the TWAIN driver is installed correctly.	○
0x0000001A	EC_ERROR_OPEN_DS (Data source open error)	Possible causes include: - The device is not be powered on. - The TWAIN driver is in use by another application. - The TWAIN driver is not be installed correctly. - The device is not be connected correctly. - The device is not be selected in Scanner Selection Tool. Please check and respond to the following. - The device is powered on. - Terminate any other application. - The TWAIN driver is installed correctly. - The device is connected correctly. - The device is selected in Scanner Selection Tool.	○
0x0000001B	EC_ERROR_ENABLE_DS (Data source enable error)	The device may have an error. This may be output if the ADF cover is open when the ClearPage is issued. Or cancellation is responded to the message "Please wait for the scanner lamp to warm up."	○ □

Error Number	Countermeasures	Atr.
0x0000001D EC_DEVICE_NOT_FOUND (Cannot find the connected device)	Check if the device is connected correctly and if the device is powered on. Also, check if the device is being used by another application.	○ □
0x0000001E EC_UNSUPPORTED_XFERMODE (Transfer mode is not supported)	An unsupported transfer mode has been specified. Modify the ScanTo property and try again.	○
0x0000001F EC_UNSUPPORTED_FILE_TYPE (File type is not supported)	An unsupported file type has been specified. Modify the FileType property and try again.	○
0x00000020 EC_CANNOT_MAKE (Cannot create a file)	Check the character string (file path) specified in the FileName property.	○
0x00000022 EC_UNSUPPORTED_DS_UNONLINE (Data source does not support the configuration screen only mode)	Check the version of the TWAIN driver.	○
0x00000023 EC_INVALID_WINDOWHANDLE (Window handle of the application is invalid)	The specified Window handle is invalid. Check if the Window handle is specified correctly.	○
0x00000024 EC_UNSUPPORTED_DEVICEONLINE (Data source in use does not support the DeviceOnline function)	The version of the TWAIN driver may be old. Or, other company's scanner driver may have been specified. Check the specified scanner driver.	○
0x00000025 EC_UNSUPPORTED_FEEDER (ADF is not supported)	The ADF is not supported. Check if the device is equipped with an ADF. Also, check the PaperSupply property and try again.	□
0x00000026 EC_UNSUPPORTED_FLATBED (Flatbed (FB) is not supported)	The flatbed (FB) is not supported. Check the PaperSupply property and try again.	□
0x00000027 EC_ERROR_FEEDPAGE (Paper feed error, or all the document pages were determined to be blank.)	Check if the documents are still in the ADF or check the scanned documents.	□
0x00000028 EC_ERROR_CLEARPAGE (Paper eject error (or the ClearPage function is not supported))	Check if a paper jam has occurred. Or, check if the TWAIN driver supports the ClearPage function.	■
0x00000029 EC_ERROR_NOT_DS_FJTWAIN (PRODUCT FAMILY is not "FUJITSU" or "PaperStream IP")	A non-TWAIN driver error. Check the currently selected driver source and select the TWAIN driver.	○
0x0000002A EC_ERROR_CANCELED (Canceled by the user, or detected an error which causes the device to be unable to continue scanning)	A cancel detection error. An error to notify the user. Or, an error which causes the device to be unable to continue scanning (insufficient disk space, pattern file error, insufficient memory, image transfer error, etc.) Check the available disk space of the drive specified in the FileName property, check if the pattern file is correct, and reduce the scan image size and resolution and try again.	□ ○
0x0000002B EC_ERROR_MAX_CONNECTIONS (Driver is in use by another application)	The TWAIN driver is in use by another application. Try again after other applications are finished.	○
0x0000002C EC_ERROR_LOW_MEMORY (Insufficient memory)	Reduce the scan image size and resolution, and try again.	○

Error Number	Countermeasures	Atr.
0x0000002D EC_ERROR_LOW_DISK (Insufficient disk space, or file writing error)	Check the available disk space on the drive specified in the FileName property. And check if any other error is occurring.	○
0x0000002E EC_ERROR_ACCESSDENIED (File is in use)	Check the file path specified in the FileName property.	○
0x0000002F EC_ERROR_ENV_SAVEFILE (File save environment error)	Check the file path specified in the FileName property.	○
0x00000030 EC_ERROR_WRITEDENIED_FILE (No write privileges to the file)	Check the file path specified in the FileName property.	
0x00000031 EC_ERROR_UNSETTING_FILENAME (File name is not specified)	Indicate the file name in the file path specified in the FileName or FileName1 or FileName2 or FileName3 property.	○
0x00000032 EC_ERROR_BAD_PATH (Specified path is invalid)	Check if the file path is correctly specified in the FileName or FileName1 or FileName2 or FileName3 property.	○
0x00000033 EC_ERROR_WRITEDENIED_DIRECTORY (No write privileges to the specified directory)	Check if you have write privileges on the directory in the file path specified in the FileName or FileName1 or FileName2 or FileName3 property.	○
0x00000034 EC_ERROR_NOT_NCEVENT (Not the NegotiateCapabilities event)	Call the GetCapability or SetCapability method using the NegotiateCapabilities event.	○
0x00000035 EC_ERROR_BAD_PARAMETER (Specified parameter is invalid)	The parameter specified for the GetCapability method is invalid, or one of the following is done for each image in the MultiStreamPropertySetting event while a value other than "0 - OFF" is set for the MultiStreamMode property. - Set "6 - Multi Image Output" or "7 - Auto Color Detection" for the FileType property - Set a value other than "0 - Black & White" to "2 - RGB" for the PixelType property Check the parameter.	○
0x00000036 EC_DOUBLEFEED (Detected paper multi-feed or double-feed)	A paper multi-feed (double-feed) detection error. An error to notify the user. Check the document status and try again.	□
0x00000037 EC_ABNORMAL_IPCOPTION (Anomaly in IPC option)	The part should be replaced, or the part may have failed. Refer to the User's Guide for your device.	■
0x00000038 EC_ADF_SETUPERROR (ADF setup error)	The ADF pick roller may be attached incorrectly, or the device may have failed. Refer to the User's Guide for your device.	■
0x00000039 EC_ABNORMAL_ENDORSER_PRINTAREA (Imprinter (Endorser) print area specification error)	The print area specification in Imprinter (Endorser) is invalid. Modify the print position.	□
0x0000003A EC_ENDORSER_PRINTHEAD_CHECK (Check Imprinter (Endorser) ink cartridge)	Check the ink cartridge for Imprinter (Endorser).	□

Error Number		Countermeasures	Atr.
0x0000003B	EC_UNSUPPORTED_FEEDER_LOADED (FeederLoaded method is not supported)	The version of the TWAIN driver may be old. Or, other company's scanner driver may have been specified. Check the specified scanner driver.	○
0x0000003D	EC_ERROR_SKEW (Abnormal skew detected)	Check whether the document is slanted.	○
0x0000003E	EC_ERROR_SCANAREA (Error in specified scan area)	The specified scan area is invalid. Change the scan area. Or, the specified document size is invalid. Change the document size.	○
0x00000044	EC_ERROR_FEEDMODESWITCHED (Feed mode switching detected)	Switching of the modes for the feed mode has been detected. Check the setting of the feed mode switch.	□
0x00000045	EC_JAM2 (Documents are detected in both the ADF paper chute and the Return path opening. Or, a paper jam has occurred)	Remove the document from either the ADF paper chute (feeder) or the Return path opening. Or, check the document status and try again.	□
0x00000062	EC_ERROR_SYSENV (System environment error)	Restart the computer and scanner device and try again. If the error persists, contact Fujitsu Support.	●
0x00000063	EC_ERROR_INTERNAL (Internal error)	Restart the computer and scanner device and try again. If the error persists, contact Fujitsu Support.	●
0x000003E9	EC_ERROR_CS_VLINE_NOT_FOUND (The vertical line on the Carrier Sheet not sensed)	Failed to process images as the vertical line on the Carrier Sheet was not sensed. Retry. If the error persists, contact Fujitsu Support.	● ■
0x000003EA	EC_ERROR_CS_HLINE_NOT_FOUND (The horizontal line on the Carrier Sheet not sensed)	Failed to process images as the horizontal line on the Carrier Sheet was not sensed. Retry. If the error persists, contact Fujitsu Support.	● ■
0x000003EC	EC_ERROR_CS_INPUT_ERROR (Illegal input parameters for merging the images scanned using the Carrier Sheet)	The material you scanned is not a Carrier Sheet. Load the Carrier Sheet again, and then retry.	●
0x000007D0	EC_ERROR_CS_INVALID_DS (Data source not supported Carrier Sheet)	The specified data source (Image Processing Software Option) does not support the Carrier Sheet. Do not specify Image Processing Software Option as the data source.	○
0x01050000	The specified read area is not suitable for the document size when the AutoBorderDetection function and Read Area Specification function are combined. Or the document detection sensor error occurs.	Change the read area specification. Or the part should be replaced, or the part may have failed.	○ ■
0x02000001	EC_ERROR_JAVA_NOINITIALIZATION	Internal initialization for Java is not called. Call internal initialization for Java.	○
0x02000002	EC_ERROR_JAVA_SDKABNORMALITY	An SDK environmental error occurred. Check if the SDK is installed properly.	●

Error Number		Countermeasures	Atr.
0x02000003	EC_ERROR_METHOD_SEQUEN CE	The method is being executed in another form. Try again after the current execution of the method has completed.	•
0x02000004	EC_ERROR_SIPC_NOTINSTALL	The Image Processing Software Option is not installed. Install the Image Processing Software Option.	•
0x02000005	EC_ERROR_TEMPLATEGET	Failed to acquire the total number/names/numbers of templates in the Image Processing Software Option. Check if the Image Processing Software Option is installed properly.	•
0x02000006	EC_ERROR_TEMPLATESET	Failed to configure numbers for templates in the Image Processing Software Option. Check if the Image Processing Software Option is installed properly.	•
0x02000007	EC_ERROR_FISCN_NOTFOUND	Resource file "FiScn.dll" was not found. Check if the "FiScn.dll" file is stored together with "FiScn.jar" in the same place.	○
0x02000010	EC_ERROR_TWAIN_NOTINSTA LL	TWAIN driver is not installed. Install a TWAIN driver.	•
0x02000011	EC_ERROR_TWAIN_TEMPLAT EGET	Failed to acquire the total number/names/numbers of setting files / profiles in the TWAIN driver. Check if the TWAIN driver is installed properly.	•
0x02000012	EC_ERROR_TWAIN_TEMPLAT ESET	Failed to configure the setting file / profile numbers in the TWAIN driver. Check if the TWAIN driver is installed properly.	•
0x02000100	EC_ERROR_FISCN_UNKNOWN	A system error occurred. Retry the process. If the error persists, contact Fujitsu Support.	•
0x0F000000 - 0x0F00FFFF	Error details set when the GetCapability/SetCapability method is called.	The Condition Code in the TWAIN protocol is set at lower 2-byte. Refer to http://www.twain.org/ for the TWAIN protocol.	○
0xFFFFFC16	EC_ERROR_CS_MEMORY (Insufficient Memory)	Failed to process the images scanned with the Carrier Sheet due to a memory failure. Retry. If the error persists, contact Fujitsu Support.	•

If the problem persists after applying the above countermeasures, or returns error codes other than the above, make a note of the error code and contact Fujitsu Support.

3.2 Relationships Between Properties

The following describes relationships between properties. Since some properties also have priority order; refer also to "[3.3 Property Priority Order](#)."

A property is invalid (ignored) if a valid condition is not configured on a target property.

Also, the property is invalid if even one invalid condition is configured on a property.

Note: Properties which are not supported by some devices are not taken into consideration in the following table. (* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
AdjustRGB	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
	oValid	PixelType	"2 - RGB"
	N/A Disabled.	ScanMode	"1 - Assist Scan"
	N/A Disabled.	sRGB	"True"
AdjustRGBB AdjustRGBG AdjustRGBR	oValid	AdjustRGB	"True"
ADTCThreshold	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	oValid	Threshold	"-1"
AIQCNotice	oValid	AutoBorderDetection	"True"
"True"	oValid	BackgroundColor	"1 - ON"
AIQCNotice	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
AutoBorderDetection	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	LengthDetection	"1 - LengthBlack" "2 - LengthBlackOVS"
	N/A Disabled.	UndefinedScanning	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
AutoBorderDetection "False"	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
AutoBright	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	N/A Disabled.	①PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		②Threshold	"-2" "-1"
	N/A Disabled.	SimpleSlicePatternRemoval	"True"
AutomaticColorBackground	N/A Disabled	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	oValid	PixelType	"3 - Automatic"
AutomaticColorSensitivity	N/A Disabled	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	oValid	PixelType	"3 - Automatic"
AutomaticRotateMode	oValid	AutoBorderDetection	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	①PaperSize	"99 - Custom"
		②LongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSize	Longer than 14 in. Longer than 17 in. if "A3" is available for the PaperSize property when an A3 scannable device is connected
	oValid	Rotation	"4 - Automatic"
AutomaticSenseMedium	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
AutoProfile	N/A Disabled.	MultiStreamMode	"1 – 2 Multimage""2 – 3 Multimage"
AutoSeparation	oValid	PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
BarcodeDetection	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
Background	N/A Disabled.	SimpleSlicePatternRemoval	"True"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
BackgroundColor	N/A Disabled.	AutoBorderDetection	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled.	LengthDetection	"1 - LengthBlack" "2 - LengthBlackOVS"
	N/A Disabled.	OverScan	"1 - ON"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
	N/A Disabled.	PunchHoleRemoval	"1 - White" "2 - Background color"
	N/A Disabled.	UndefinedScanning	"True"(FUJITSU TWAIN32 Driver only)
BackgroundSmoothing	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	oValid	PixelType	"1 - Grayscale" "2 - RGB"
BackgroundSmoothness	oValid	BackgroundSmoothing	"1 - Automatic" "2 - White"
BackgroundThreshold	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	oValid	① PixelType ② Threshold	"0 - Black & White" "-2"
BarcodeDetection	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
BarcodeDirection BarcodeMaxSearchPriorities BarcodeNotDetectionNotice BarcodeRegionLeft BarcodeRegionLength BarcodeRegionTop BarcodeRegionWidth BarcodeType	oValid	BarcodeDetection	"True"
Binding	oValid	PaperSupply	"2 - ADF(Duplex)"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
	N/A Disabled.	Rotation	"4 - Automatic"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
BlankPageIgnoreAreaSize BlankPageNotice "1 - ON" BlankPageSkipMode	Valid	① BlankPageSkipMode	"0 - Sensitivity"
		② BlankPageSkip	"1 - 11"
	Valid	① BlankPageSkipMode	"1 - Black & White Dots Ratio"
		② SkipBlackPage	"1 - 50"
	Valid	① BlankPageSkipMode	"1 - Black & White Dots Ratio"
		② SkipWhitePage	"1 - 50"
BlankPageIgnoreAreaSize BlankPageNotice BlankPageSkip BlankPageSkipMode BlankPageSkipTabPage	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
BlankPageSkip	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
BlankPageSkipTabPage	Valid	① BlankPageSkipMode	"0 - Sensitivity"
		② BlankPageSkip	"1 - 11"
		③ AutoBorderDetection	"True"
	Valid	① BlankPageSkipMode	"1 - Black & White Dots Ratio"
		② SkipBlackPage	"1 - 50"
	Valid	③ AutoBorderDetection	"True"
Brightness	N/A Disabled.	AutoBright	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	Gamma	"1 - Soft" "2 - Sharp" "3 - Gamma Pattern File" "5 - Bright" "6 - Standard"
		PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
		① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
	N/A Disabled.	② Threshold	"-2" "-1"
		SimpleSlicePatternRemoval	"True"
CarrierSheetClippingMode	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"14 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping All)" — "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
CharacterExtraction	Valid	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"-2"
CharacterExtractionMethod	Valid	CharacterExtraction	"True"
CharacterThickness	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
		① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
	Valid	② Threshold	"-2"
CloseSourceUI	Valid	ShowSourceUI	"True"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
ColorReproduction	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
	oValid	PixelType	"2 - RGB"
	N/A Disabled	ScanMode	"1 - Assist Scan"
	N/A Disabled	sRGB	"True"
ColorReproductionBrightness ColorReproductionContrast ColorReproductionCustomGamma ColorReproductionHighlight ColorReproductionShadow	oValid	ColorReproduction	"1 - Hue"
CompressionType	N/A Disabled.	FileType	"0 - BMP" Note: Except when the ScanTo property is set to "2 - Raw Image Handle"
CompressionType "6 - Old JPEG"	N/A Disabled.	① FileType	"4 - PDF" "5 - Multipage PDF"
		② PixelType	"1 - Grayscale" "2 - RGB"
CompressionType "1 - CCITT G3(1D)" "2 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 2" "3 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 4" "4 - CCITT G4" "6 - Old JPEG"	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
Contrast	N/A Disabled.	AutoBright	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	Gamma	"1 - Soft" "2 - Sharp" "3 - Gamma Pattern File" "5 - Bright" "6 - Standard"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	N/A Disabled.	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"-2" "-1"
	N/A Disabled.	SimpleSlicePatternRemoval	"True"
CropMarginSize	oValid	AutoBorderDetection	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
	oValid	SelectOutputSize	"0 - Margin"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
CropPriority	oValid	AutoBorderDetection	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	ScanMode	"1 - Assist Scan"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed"
			"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
CustomGamma	oValid	Gamma	"4 - Custom"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
CustomPaperLength LongPage (For conditions that make the LongPage property invalid when "True" is set for the FrontBackMergingEnabled property, refer to the driver help.)	N/A Disabled.	① LongPage	"True"
		② PaperSize	"99 - Custlom"
		③ FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
CustomPaperLength 17inch or over	N/A Disabled.	① LongPage	"True"
		② PaperSize	"99 - Custlom"
		③ AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
CustomPaperLength, CustomPaperWidth	oValid	PaperSize	"99 - Custom"
CustomPaperLength, CustomPaperWidth	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "30 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Auto)" " "32 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex All)" – "48 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Auto)"
CustomResolution	oValid	Resolution	"99 - Custlom"
Deskew	N/A Disabled.	AutoBorderDetection	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	LengthDetection	"1 - LengthBlack" "2 - LengthBlackOVS"
	N/A Disabled.	UndefinedScanning	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
DeskewBackground	N/A Disabled	Deskew	"2 - OFF"
	N/A Disabled	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
DeskewMode	N/A Disabled.	Deskew	"2 - OFF"
DigitalEndorser	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
DigitalEndorserCountDirection DigitalEndorserCounter DigitalEndorserCountStep DigitalEndorserDirection DigitalEndorserString DigitalEndorserXOffset DigitalEndorserYOffset	oValid	DigitalEndorser	"True"
DivideLongPage	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled.	MultiStreamMode	"1 – 2 Multimage""2 – 3 Multimage"
DTCSSensitivity	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	oValid	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"-2"
EdgeFiller	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
EdgeFillerBottom EdgeFillerLeft EdgeFillerRigth EdgeFillerTop	oValid	EdgeFiller	"1 - Black" "2 - White"
EdgeRepair	oValid	AutoBorderDetection	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
Endorser	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
EndorserCountDirection , EndorserCounter , EndorserCountStep , EndorserDialog , EndorserDirection , EndorserFont , EndorserOffset , EndorserString	o Valid	Endorser	"True"
FadingCompensation	o Valid	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"-2"
FileCounter	o Valid	ScanTo	"0 - File"
	N/A Disabled.	① MultiStreamMode	"1 - 2 MultiImage""2 - 3 MultiImage"
		② MultiStreamFileNameMode	"1 - ON"
FileCounter1 FileCounter2 FileCounter3	o Valid	① MultiStreamMode	"1 - 2 MultiImage""2 - 3 MultiImage"
		② MultiStreamFileNameMode	"1 - ON"
FileName	o Valid	ScanTo	"0 - File"
	N/A Disabled.	① MultiStreamMode	"1 - 2 MultiImage""2 - 3 MultiImage"
		② MultiStreamFileNameMode	"1 - ON"
FileName1 FileName2 FileName3	o Valid	① MultiStreamMode	"1 - 2 MultiImage""2 - 3 MultiImage"
		② MultiStreamFileNameMode	"1 - ON"
FileType	o Valid	ScanTo	"0 - File"
Filter	N/A Disabled.	CharacterExtraction	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PixelType	"2 - RGB"
	N/A Disabled.	SimpleSlicePatternRemoval	"True"
FilterSaturationSensitivity	o Valid	Filter	"5 - Saturation"
FrontBackDetection	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	Endorser	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	JobControl	"1 - Include and Continue" – "4 - Exclude and Stop"
	o Valid	PaperSupply	"2 - ADF(Duplex)"
	N/A Disabled.	PixelType	"4 - SwitchByCodeSheet "
FrontBackMergingEnabled	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	MultiStreamMode	"1 - 2 MultiImage""2 - 3 MultiImage"
FrontBackMergingLocation FrontBackMergingRotation FrontBackMergingTarget	o Valid	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
FrontBackMergingTargetMode	o Valid	① FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
		② FrontBackMergingTarget	"1 - Short" "2 - Long"
FrontBackMergingTargetSize	o Valid	① FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
		② FrontBackMergingTarget	"1 - Short" "2 - Long"
		③ FrontBackMergingTargetMode	"1 - Custom"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
Gamma	N/A Disabled.	AutoBright	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	N/A Disabled.	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"-2" "-1"
	N/A Disabled.	SimpleSlicePatternRemoval	"True"
GammaFile	○Valid	Gamma	"3 - Gamma Pattern File"
Halftone	○Valid	PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
	○Valid	CompressionType	"0 - No Compress"
HalftoneFile	○Valid	Halftone	"5 - Dither Pattern File"
Highlight	N/A Disabled.	AutoBright	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	N/A Disabled.	Gamma	"1 - Soft" "2 - Sharp" "3 - Gamma Pattern File" "5 - Bright" "6 - Standard"
	○Valid	PixelType	"2 - RGB"
	N/A Disabled.	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"-2" "-1"
	○Valid	① Gamma	"4 - Custom"(FUJITSU TWAIN32 Driver only)
		② PixelType	"1 - Grayscale"
	○Valid	ShowSourceUI	"False"
JobControl	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	N/A Disabled.	① PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "3 - ADF(BackSide)"
		② JobControlMode	"0 - Special Document"
	N/A Disabled.	① PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "3 - ADF(BackSide)" (FUJITSU TWAIN32 Driver only)
		② JobControlMode	"1 - Patch Code Document" (FUJITSU TWAIN32 Driver only)
JobControlMode	N/A Disabled.	JobControl	"0 - None"
JpegQuality	○Valid	① ScanTo	"0 - File"
		② FileType	"3 - JPEG" "4 - PDF" "5 - Multipage PDF"
	○Valid	① ScanTo	"0 - File"
		② FileType	"1 - TIFF", "2 - Multipage TIFF"
		③ CompressionType	"5 - JPEG", "6 - Old JPEG"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
LengthDetection	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
LongPage	oValid	PaperSize	"99 - Custom"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "3 - ADF(BackSide)" (FUJITSU TWAIN32 Driver only) "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
MultiFeed	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
MultiFeedModeChangeSize	oValid	MultiFeed	"1 - Mode0" "2 - Mode1" "4 - Mode3"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
MultiFeedNotice	N/A Disabled.	MultiFeed	"0 - None" "1 - Mode1"(FUJITSU TWAIN32 Driver only)
MultiStreamDefaultValueMode	oValid	MultiStreamMode	"1 – 2 MultiImage""2 – 3 MultiImage"
MultiStreamFileNameMode	oValid	MultiStreamMode	"1 – 2 MultiImage""2 – 3 MultiImage"
NoiseRejection	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	oValid	① PixelType ② Threshold	"0 - Black & White" "-2"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
NoiseRemoval	oValid	① PixelFormat	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"0"
Orientation	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
Outline	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
Outline "0 - None" "1 - Outline Emphasis Low" "2 - Outline Emphasis Mid" "3 - Outline Emphasis High" "4 - Outline Smooth" "5 - Edge Extract"	oValid	PixelFormat	"0 - Black & White"
Outline "0 - None" "1 - Outline Emphasis Low" "2 - Outline Emphasis Mid" "3 - Outline Emphasis High" "5 - De-Screen Level 1" "6 - De-Screen Level 2" "7 - De-Screen Level 3" "8 - De-Screen Level 4"	oValid	PixelFormat	"2 - RGB"
OverScan	N/A Disabled.	AutoBorderDetection	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled.	Deskew	"0 - Edge", "1 - Documents"
	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	LengthDetection	"1 - LengthBlack" "2 - LengthBlackOVS"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
	N/A Disabled.	UndefinedScanning	"True"
Overwrite	oValid	ScanTo	"0 - File"
PaperProtection	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
PaperSize	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
PaperSize "22 - 8.5 x 34 inch " – "27 - 8.5 x 220inch " "31 - 12 x 34inch" – "32 - 12 x 125inch" "34 - 12 x 106.3inch" - "37 - 12 x 220inch "	N/A Disabled	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
PaperSize "23 - 8.5 x 106.3 inch " – "27 - 8.5 x 220inch " "32 - 12 x 125inch" "34 - 12 x 106.3inch" - "37 - 12 x 220inch "	N/A Disabled	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
PaperSupply "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"	N/A Disabled	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
PaperSupply "0 - Flatbed" "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
PaperSupply "0 - Flatbed" "1 - ADF" "3 - ADF(BackSide) " "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom) "	N/A Disabled	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
PatchCodeDetection	N/A Disabled. N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
		PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
PatchCodeDirection PatchCodeType	oValid	PatchCodeDetection	"True"
PatternRemoval	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	oValid	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"-2"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
PixelType - "0 - Black&White"	N/A Disabled.	FileType	"3 - JPEG"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
PixelType - "1 - Grayscale"	N/A Disabled.	① ScanTo	"0 - File"
		② FileType	"1 - TIFF", "2 - Multipage TIFF"
		③ CompressionType	"1 - CCITT G3(1D)" "2 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 2" "3 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 4" "4 - CCITT G4"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
PixelType - "3 - Automatic"	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	oValid	CompressionType	"0 - No Compress"
	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
PixelType - "4 - SwitchByCodeSheet "	N/A Disabled.	AutomaticSenseMedium	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	oValid	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"False"
	oValid	JobControl	"0 - None"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
	oValid	ScanMode	"0 - Normal Scan"
PreFiltering	oValid	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"0"
PunchHoleRemoval	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
PunchHoleRemovalMode	oValid	PunchHoleRemoval	"1 - White" "2 - Background color"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
RegionLeft	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
RegionLength	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
RegionTop	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
RegionWidth	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
Report	N/A Disabled.	MultiStreamMode	"1 – 2 Multimage""2 – 3 Multimage"
ReportFile	oValid	Report	"2 - File" "3 - Display+File"
Resolution - "9 - 1200x1200"	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
Reverse	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
Rotation	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
Rotation "0 - None" "0 - R90" "0 - R180" "0 - R270"	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
Rotation - "4 - Automatic"	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
ScanContinue	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
ScanContinueMode	N/A Disabled.	ScanContinue	"False"
ScanCount	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
ScanMode	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	MultiStreamMode	"1 – 2 Multimage""2 – 3 Multimage"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"0 - Flatbed" "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
ScanTo - "2 - Raw Image Handle"	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
ScanTo - "1 - Dib Handle" "2 - Raw Image Handle"	N/A Disabled.	MultiStreamMode	"1 – 2 MultiImage""2 – 3 MultiImage"
SDTCSensitivity	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	oValid	Threshold	"0"
SEE	oValid	① AutoSeparation	"0 - OFF"
		② CompressionType	"0 - No Compress "
		③ Halftone	"1 - Dither Pattern 0" "2 - Dither Pattern 1" "3 - Dither Pattern 2" "4 - Dither Pattern 3" "5 - Dither Pattern Fil" "6 - Error Diffusion"
		④ PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
SelectOutputSize	oValid	AutoBorderDetection	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
Shadow	N/A Disabled.	AutoBright	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	N/A Disabled.	Gamma	"1 - Soft" "2 - Sharp" "3 - Gamma Pattern File" "5 - Bright" "6 - Standard"
	oValid	PixelType	"2 - RGB"
	N/A Disabled.	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"-2" "-1"
	oValid	① Gamma	"4 - Custom"(FUJITSU TWAIN32 Driver only)
		② PixelType	"1 - Grayscale"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
Sharpness	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
	N/A Disabled.	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
	N/A Disabled.	② Threshold	"-2" "-1"
Sharpness "0 - None" "1 - Emphasis Low" "2 - Emphasis Mid" "3 - Emphasis High" "5 - Smoothing Level 1" "6 - Smoothing Level 2" "7 - Smoothing Level 3" "8 - Smoothing Level 4"	Valid	SimpleSlicePatternRemoval	"True"
		① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"0"
Sharpness "0 - None" "1 - Emphasis Low" "2 - Emphasis Mid" "3 - Emphasis High" "4 - Edge Extract" "5 - Smoothing Level 1" "6 - Smoothing Level 2" "7 - Smoothing Level 3" "8 - Smoothing Level 4"	Valid	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"1 to 255"
Sharpness "0 - None" "1 - Emphasis Low" "2 - Emphasis Mid" "3 - Emphasis High" "5 - De-Screen Level 1" "6 - De-Screen Level 2" "7 - De-Screen Level 3" "8 - De-Screen Level 4"	Valid	PixelType	"1 - Grayscale" "2 - RGB"
ShowSourceUI	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
SimpleSlicePatternRemoval	Valid	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② ScanMode	"0 - Normal Scan"
		③ Threshold	"1 to 255"
SkipBlackPage	N/A Disabled.	BlankPageSkipMode	"0 - Sensitivity" (for PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver)
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"
SkipWhitePage	N/A Disabled.	BlankPageSkipMode	"0 - Sensitivity" (for PaperStream IP (TWAIN) driver)
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"

Property	Conditions (property values) which make the property on the left valid or invalid		
	Valid / Invalid	Property	Value
Smoothing	oValid	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"0"
sRGB	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
	oValid	PixelType	"2 - RGB"
SynchronizationDigitalEndorser	oValid	① DigitalEndorser	"True"
		② Endorser	"True"
Threshold	oValid	① Halftone	"0 - None"
		② PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		③ CompressionType	"0 - No Compress"(FUJITSU TWAIN32 Driver only)
ThresholdCurve	oValid	① PixelType	"0 - Black & White"
		② Threshold	"0"
UndefinedScanning	N/A Disabled.	AutoProfile	"1 - Enabled"
	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	FrontBackMergingEnabled	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	LengthDetection	"1 - LengthBlack" "2 - LengthBlackOVS"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" "10 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)" – "49 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping Duplex Custom)"
VerticalLineReduction	oValid	AutoBorderDetection	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	DivideLongPage	"True"
	N/A Disabled.	PaperSupply	"4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)" "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)" "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)" "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"

Note: When the SourceCurrentScan property is set to "True," all properties are invalid except the ScanTo, FileType, FileName, CompressionType, ScanCount, ShowSourceUI, SilentMode, FileCounter, JpegQuality, Indicator, Overwrite, AIQCNotice and MultiFeedNotice properties.

3.3 Property Priority Order

There are the following cases where only one property (effect) becomes valid (others are all invalid) even if valid values are set on multiple properties (effects).

The following indicates that the properties on the right of an inequality sign take precedence over the properties on the left.

Note: Properties which are not supported by some devices are not taken into consideration in the following table. (* Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume).")

- [BackgroundColor](#) < [OverScan](#) < [Deskew](#) < [AutoBorderDetection](#) < [UndefinedScanning](#) < [LengthDetection](#) < [FrontBackMergingEnabled](#) < [DivideLongPage](#) < [AutoProfile](#)

- [BackgroundColor](#) < [PunchHoleRemoval](#)

- [PixelType](#) "0 - Black & White" < [Threshold](#) "0" < [Halftone](#) < [SEE](#) < [AutoSeparation](#) < [PixelType](#) "1 - Grayscale," "2 - RGB"

- [PixelType](#) "1 - Grayscale", "2 - RGB" < [CompressionType](#) "1 - CCITT G3(1D)," "2 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 2," "3 - CCITT G3(2D) KFactor = 4," "4 - CCITT G4"

(Only when the FileType property is set to "1 - TIFF" or "2 - Multipage TIFF.")

- [PixelType](#) "0 - Black&White", "1 - Grayscale" < [PaperSupply](#) "4 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread A3)", "5 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread DL)", "6 - ADF(CarrierSheet Spread B4)", "7 - ADF(CarrierSheet Clipping)"

3.4 Valid Specifications When Using the Image Processing Software Option

Property

Refer to "Reference Manual (Separate Volume)"

Method

All methods are valid except the SetCapability and GetCapability methods.

Event

All events are valid.

3.5 How to Change the Property Default Values

The following describes how to change the property default values without modifying the application that has been already developed.

Adding the commands below to the fiscn.ini file in the Windows directory (with C:\Windows as the default) enables the customization. Only include the properties for the default values that you wish to customize.

```
[Default]
AdjustRGB=0
AdjustRGR=128
AdjustRGBG=128
AdjustRGRB=128
ADTCThreshold=83
AIQCNotice=0
AutoBorderDetection=0
AutoBright=0
AutomaticColorBackground=0
AutomaticColorSensitivity=0
AutomaticRotateMode=0
AutomaticSenseMedium=0
AutoProfile=0
AutoProfileSensitivity=3
AutoSeparation=0
Background=0
BackgroundColor=0
BackgroundSmoothing=0
BackgroundSmoothness=5
BackgroundThreshold=50
BarcodeDetection=0
BarcodeDirection=2
BarcodeMaxSearchPriorities=1
BarcodeNotDetectionNotice=0
BarcodeRegionLeft=0
BarcodeRegionLength=0
BarcodeRegionTop=0
BarcodeRegionWidth=0
BarcodeType=511
Binding=0
BlankPageIgnoreAreaSize=16
BlankPageNotice=0
BlankPageSkip=0
BlankPageSkipMode=0
BlankPageSkipTabPage=0
Brightness=128
CarrierSheetClippingMode=2
CharacterExtraction=0
CharacterExtractionMethod=7
CharacterThickness=5
CloseSourceUI=0
ColorReproduction=0
ColorReproductionBrightness=128
ColorReproductionContrast=128
ColorReproductionCustomGamma=1.0
ColorReproductionHighlight=255
ColorReproductionShadow=0
```

CompressionType=4
Contrast=128
CropMarginSize=0.0
CropPriority=0
CustomGamma=2.2
CustomPaperLength=1
CustomPaperWidth=1
CustomResolution=300
Deskew=2
DeskewBackground=1
DeskewMode=0
DigitalEndorser=0
DigitalEndorserCountDirection=0
DigitalEndorserCounter=0
DigitalEndorserCountStep=1
DigitalEndorserDirection=0
DigitalEndorserString=ABCDEFGH%05ud
DigitalEndorserXOffset=0
DigitalEndorserYOffset=0
DivideLongPage=0
DTCSensitivity=50
EdgeFiller=0
EdgeFillerBottom=0
EdgeFillerLeft=0
EdgeFillerRight=0
EdgeFillerTop=0
EdgeRepair=0
Endorser=0
EndorserCountDirection=0
EndorserCounter=0
EndorserCountStep=1
EndorserDialog=0
EndorserDirection=1
EndorserFont=0
EndorserOffset=0
EndorserString=ABCDEFGH%05ud
FadingCompensation=0
FileCounter=1
FileCounter1=1
FileCounter2=1
FileCounter3=1
FileName=C:\Program Files\FiScnSDK23\Image#####
FileName1=C:\Program Files\FiScnSDK23\Image1_#####
FileName2=C:\Program Files\FiScnSDK23\Image2_#####
FileName3=C:\Program Files\FiScnSDK23\Image3_#####
FileType=1
Filter=0
FilterSaturationSensitivity=50
FrontBackDetection=0
FrontBackMergingEnabled=0
FrontBackMergingLocation=3
FrontBackMergingRotation=0
FrontBackMergingTarget=0
FrontBackMergingTargetMode=1
FrontBackMergingTargetSize=1
Gamma=0

GammaFile=C:\Program Files\FiScnSDK23\gamma.gma
Halftone=0
HalftoneFile=C:\Program Files\FiScnSDK23\halftone.dth
HwCompression=0
Highlight=230
Indicator=1
JobControl=0
JobControlMode=0
JpegQuality=3
LengthDetection=0
LongPage=0
Mirroring=0
MultiFeed=0
MultiFeedModeChangeSize=0.0
MultiFeedNotice=0
MultiStreamDefaultValueMode=0
MultiStreamFileNameMode=0
MultiStreamMode=0
NoiseRejection=0
NoiseRemoval=0
Orientation=0
Outline=0
OverScan=0
Overwrite=2
PaperProtection=3
PaperSize=1
PaperSupply=1
PatchCodeDetection=0
PatchCodeDirection=1
PatchCodeType=303
PatternRemoval=1
PixelType=0
PreFiltering=0
PunchHoleRemoval=0
PunchHoleRemovalMode=0
RegionLeft=0
RegionLength=0
RegionTop=0
RegionWidth=0
Report=0
ReportFile=C:\Program Files\FiScnSDK23\ReportFile.txt
Resolution=2
Reverse=0
Rotation=0
ScanContinue=0
ScanContinueMode=0
ScanCount=-1
ScanMode=0
ScanTo=0
SDTCSensitivity=2
SEE=0
SelectOutputSize=0
Shadow=10
Sharpness=0
ShowSourceUI=1
SilentMode=0

```
SimpleSlicePatternRemoval=0
SkipBlackPage=0
SkipWhitePage=0
Smoothing=0
SourceCurrentScan=0
sRGB=0
SynchronizationDigitalEndorser=0
Threshold=128
ThresholdCurve=0
TwainDS=FUJITSU fi-7160dj
TwainDSAnyPort=0
UndefinedScanning=0
Unit=0
VerticalLineReduction=0
```

If the values set are not enabled by the properties, no change will be made to the default values. Changes in the default values are enabled after the application is launched following the modification of fiscn.ini. Altering the values of fiscn.ini while the application is running will not change the default values.

3.6 Bitmap Class Conversion Libraries for Visual Basic / Visual C#

Libraries are provided in order to convert the image data, which is passed from the SDK in the ScanToDibEx event when the ScanTo property is set to "1 - Dib Handle," or in the ScanToRawEx event when the ScanTo property is set to "2 - Raw Image Handle", into the Bitmap class.

To use the libraries, use "FiScnUtildN20.dll" or "FiScnUtildN4x.dll."

"FiScnUtildN20.dll" is a DLL for applications that support .NET Framework 2.0 to 3.5, and "FiScnUtildN4x.dll" is a DLL for applications that support .NET Framework 4.x.

The libraries only support applications created in Visual Basic/Visual C#.

For the usage of the libraries, refer to the ScanToDibEx or ScanToRawEx event in the Visual Basic or Visual C# sample.

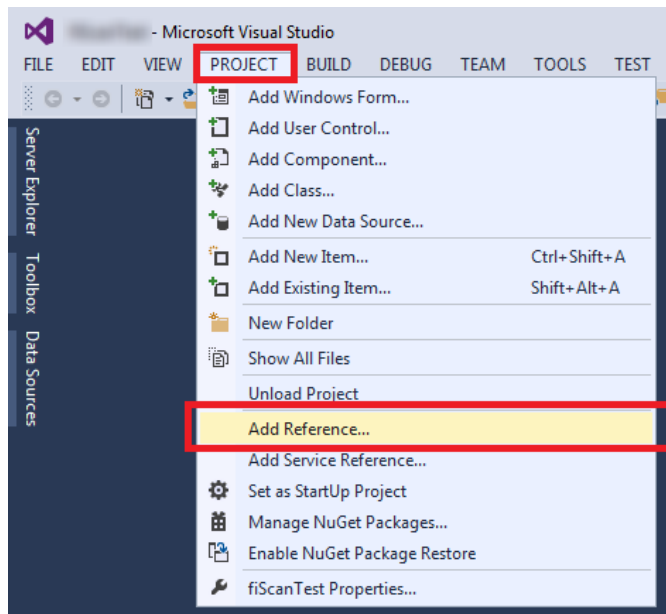
3.6.1 Preparation for using DLL

The following explains how to create an application that supports .NET Framework 4.0 with Visual Studio 2013 as an example.

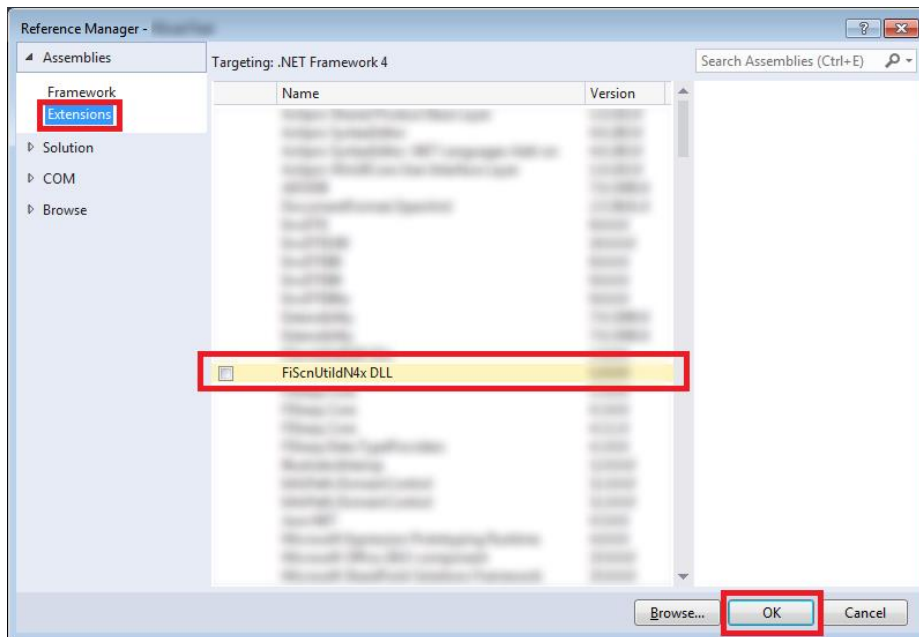
Caution

If you create an application on another development environment, replace the following procedure with the one suitable for the development environment you actually use accordingly.

1. Select the [PROJECT] menu - [Add Reference...].



2. Select [Extensions] under [Assemblies], then select "FiScnUtildN4x.DLL", and click the [OK] button.



3. Create and build an application.

Caution

To create an application that supports .NET Framework 2.0 to 3.5, use "FiScnUtildN20.dll". "FiScnUtildN20.dll" and "FiScnUtildN4x.dll" cannot be used at the same time.

3.6.2 Constructors

Feature

Initialize the new ConvH2BM class instance.

Coding Style

ConvH2BM ()

Parameters

N/A

Return Values

N/A

3.6.3 Properties

3.6.3.1 ErrorCode error information acquisition

Feature

Gets error information when GetBitmapFromDIB/GetBitmapFromRAW methods end abnormally.

Coding Style

FiScnUtildN.ConvH2BM.**ErrorCode** [= Long]

Default

No error 0x00000000

Error List

Error Number		Countermeasures
0x00000000	No error	—
0x00000001	Invalid parameter	The specified parameter is invalid. Check the parameter.
0x00000002	Insufficient memory	Reduce the scan image size and resolution, and try again.
0xFFFFFFFF	Internal error	Restart the application and try again. If the error persists, contact Fujitsu Support.

Caution

The error information that this property holds is cleared at the following timing:

- When the GetBitmapFromDIB method is called
- When the GetBitmapFromRAW method is called

3.6.4 Methods

3.6.4.1 GetBitmapFromDIB Converting the DIB handle into the Bitmap class

Feature

Converts the image data, which is indicated by the DIB handle that is passed from the SDK when the ScanToDibEx event occurred, into the Bitmap class format .

.

Coding Style

FiScnUtildN.ConvH2BM.**GetBitmapFromDIB**(ByVal hDib As Long) [= Bitmap]

Parameters

hDib DIB (Device Independent Bitmap) handle

Return Values

Bitmap class	Normal end
NULL	Error

Cautions

Release the Bitmap class returned as the return value of this function using the Bitmap.Dispose() method after the Bitmap class is no longer needed.

When an error occurs, details of the error are recorded to the error code. Refer to the FiScnUtildN.ConvH2BM.ErrorCode property to obtain the error code. Note that the error code is initialized when this method is called.

3.6.4.2 GetBitmapFromRAW

.... Converting the image data handle into the Bitmap class

Feature

Converts the image data, which is indicated by the image data handle that is passed from the SDK when the ScanToRawEx event occurred, into the Bitmap class format .

Coding Style

```
FiScnUtildN.ConvH2BM.GetBitmapFromRAW(ByVal Resolution As Integer,  
                                         ByVal ImageWidth As Long,  
                                         ByVal ImageLength As Long,  
                                         ByVal BitPerPixel As Integer,  
                                         ByVal CompressionType As Integer,  
                                         ByVal Size As Long,  
                                         ByVal hRaw As Long ) [ = Bitmap]
```

Parameters

Resolution	Resolution (dpi)
ImageWidth	Image width (pixel)
ImageLength	Image length (pixel)
BitPerPixel	Number of bits per pixel (Binary (Black and White): 1, Grayscale: 8, RGB color: 24)
CompressionType	Compression type (No compression: 0, MH compression: 1, MR compression K Factor 2: 2, MR compression K Factor 4: 3, MMR compression: 4, JPEG compression: 5)
Size	Data size
hRaw	Image data handle (pointer)

Return Values

Bitmap class	Normal end
NULL	Error

Cautions

Release the Bitmap class returned as the return value of this function using the Bitmap.Dispose() method after the Bitmap class is no longer needed.

The BitPerPixel and the CompressionType support the values written in "Parameters" only. Even if a data compression format is specified for the CompressionType property, this function decodes the image data to uncompressed data. Note that the decoding may degrade the processing performance.

To specify "JPEG" for the CompressionType, PaperStream IP driver or Fujitsu TWAIN driver must be installed.

When an error occurs, details of the error are recorded to the error code. Refer to the FiScnUtildN.ConvH2BM.ErrorCode property to obtain the error code. Note that the error code is initialized when this method is called.

3.7 Explanation of Terms Used

ASPI (Advanced SCSI Programming Interface)

Advanced SCSI interface driver. One of the SCSI interface drivers which has a general application interface.

Capability

A function which is used to communicate with the source (driver) by the TWAIN interface.

TWAIN

A standard specification for communications between a software application and an image input device such as an image scanner.

Imprinter (Endorser)

A type of printer mechanism and an optional device for the fi Series image Scanners. Image scanners equipped with this optional device are able to print numbers to identify documents before and after the scan. (Some image scanners do not support this option)

Gamma adjustment

An adjustment which brightens or darkens the image sensor output which is proportional with the light reflected from the document.

Image Processing Software Option

An optional software product which provides high quality image processing at low price for image scanners which is not supported by image processing boards.

Image processing board

An optional board which provides high speed and high quality image processing on scanned image data before transmitting it to an image processing application. (Some image scanners do not support this option)

Error diffusion method

A pseudo halftone method which balances high gradation quality and high resolution quality, by rearranging black pixels in their density order based upon the sum total of density of focused pixels and surrounding pixels, and the relationship between adjacent pixels.

Contrast

The ratio between the brightest part and darkest part of an image on the document. Contrast is high where black and white are distinct.

Silent mode

A mode which does not issue notifications such as error messages.

Background adjustment

An automatic contrast adjustment applied when scanning a document whose background is not white.

Automatic separation

A process which captures lines in black and white, and images in halftone by distinguishing line areas (characters) and image areas (photos) at scanning.

Jam

A state that the document clogs up at the middle of the transfer route in an image scanner.

Job control

Control of a process which is performed when a special document (document of a particular form) is detected.

Threshold

A threshold value used as criteria to distinguish black and white on a black and white image.

Selectable edge enhancement

A process to scan both the line areas (characters) and image areas (photos) using halftone and to enhance line areas only.

Source (data source)

The control section of image scanners such as "TWAIN driver."

Source manager (data source manager)

Indicates TWAIN.DLL or TWAIN_32.DLL. An application and a source (TWAIN driver) communicate through this source manager.

Multi-feed (double-feed)

A phenomenon where two or more pages of a document are fed together.

Halftone process

A process to express pseudo gray using black and white.

Dropout color

Colors of characters or images which are printed on a document; though they are visible to the human eye, they do not appear on the image scanned by an image scanner.

Brightness

Degree of luminosity on the image.

Outline smoothing

This process removes rough lines and will smooth curved lines in the image.

Index

A

AboutBox	222
Acquire Automatic Image Quality Checker results	14
ADF	161
ADF(CarrierSheet A3)	161
ADF(CarrierSheet B4)	161
ADF(CarrierSheet).....	162
ADF/FB automatic switching.....	20
Adjusting the brightness of each color (RGB) separately	8
AdjustRGB.....	8
AdjustRGBB	9
AdjustRGBG	10
AdjustRGBR	11
ADTCThreshold.....	12
AIQCNotice.....	13
AIQCResult.....	14
Applying a profile automatically	21
Auto Color Detection	109
AutoBorderDetection	15
AutoBright.....	16
Automatic (advanced) binary threshold setting.....	12
Automatic (simple) binary dispersion value	191
Automatic Image Quality Checker setting.....	13
AutomaticColorSensitivity	18
AutomaticRotateMode	19
AutomaticSenseMedium.....	20
AutoProfile.....	21
AutoProfileSelection	267
AutoProfileSensitivity	22
AutoSeparation.....	23

B

Background	24
Background color (black or white background) setting	25
Background color smoothing setting.....	26
Background color smoothness setting.....	27
Background color threshold setting	28
Background tracking setting	24
BackgroundColor.....	25
BackgroundSmoothing	26
BackgroundSmoothness	27
BackgroundThreshold	28
Ballpoint pen filtering setting.....	172
Barcode detection notification.....	268
Barcode detail detection notification	269
Barcode detection setting	29
Barcode direction.....	30
Barcode maximum detection count	31
Barcode type	38
BarcodeDetection	29
BarcodeDirection.....	30
BarcodeMaxSearchPriorities	31
BarcodeNotDetectionNotice	32
BarcodeRegionLeft.....	33
BarcodeRegionLength.....	34
BarcodeRegionTop.....	36

BarcodeRegionWidth.....	37
BarcodeType	38
Binding	40
Bitmap class conversion libraries	336
Black and white inversion / Color inversion configuration	184
Blank page skip settings for index-tabbed pages.....	46
BlankPageIgnoreAreaSize	41
BlankPageNotice	42
BlankPageResult.....	43
BlankPageSkip	44
BlankPageSkipMode	45
BlankPageSkipTabPage.....	46
BMP.....	109
Bottom edge area setting (edge filler).....	84
Brightness	47
Brightness setting	47

C

CancelScan	223
Capability acquisition.....	228
Capability configuration	255
Capability configuration notification	276
CarrierSheetClippingMode	48
Character string	77
Character thickness setting	51
CharacterExtraction.....	49
CharacterExtractionMethod.....	50
CharacterThickness.....	51
Chromatic dropout color sensitivity setting	113
ClearPage	224
CloseScanner.....	226
CloseSourceUI	52
ColorReproduction.....	53
ColorReproductionBrightness.....	54
ColorReproductionContrast.....	55
ColorReproductionCustomGamma	56
ColorReproductionHighlight.....	57
ColorReproductionShadow.....	58
CompressionType	59
Continuous scanning method	187
Contrast.....	61
Contrast setting	61
Converting into Bitmap class format	339, 340
ConvH2BM	338
Counter default.....	91
Counter default value	74
Counter print direction	95
Counter print font.....	96
Counter step direction	73, 90
CropMarginSize.....	62
CropPriority	63
Custom document width setting	67
CustomGamma	64
CustomPaperLength.....	65
CustomPaperWidth	67
CustomResolution	68
Custom-sized document length setting.....	65

D

Data compression type setting	59
Data source selection process.....	251, 252
Density curve configuration (when automatic binarization is specified).....	211
De-Screen Level.....	153
Deskew.....	69
DeskewBackground.....	70
DeskewMode.....	71
DetectBarcode.....	268
DetectBarcodeDetail.....	269
Detecting document feeding errors.....	158
DetectJobSeparator.....	271
DetectPatchCode	272
Device (scanner) status confirmation	249, 250
Digital endorser character string setting	77
Digital endorser counter default value setting.....	74
Digital endorser counter step direction setting.....	73
Digital endorser counter step value setting.....	75
Digital endorser output direction setting	76
Digital endorser output start position (X offset) setting	78
Digital endorser output start position (Y offset) setting	79
Digital endorser setting.....	72
DigitalEndorser	72
DigitalEndorserCountDirection	73
DigitalEndorserCounter	74
DigitalEndorserCountStep	75
DigitalEndorserDirection	76
DigitalEndorserString.....	77
DigitalEndorserXOffset.....	78
DigitalEndorserYOffset	79
DivideLongPage	80
Document ejection.....	224
Document orientation setting	151
Document size setting (fixed size)	159
Dropout color setting	111
DTCsensitivity	82
Duplex binding direction setting.....	40
Dust removal mode setting.....	150
Dynamic Threshold (IDTC) binary sensitivity setting	82

E

Edge extraction.....	152, 153
Edge filler.....	83
Edge filler repair	88
Edge filler setting.....	83
EdgeFiller	83
EdgeFillerBottom	84
EdgeFillerLeft	85
EdgeFillerRight.....	86
EdgeFillerTop	87
EdgeRepair.....	88
Endorser	89
Endorser/imprinter and digital endorser synchronization function	209
Endorser/imprinter print direction setting	95
Endorser/imprinter print font setting.....	96
Endorser/imprinter print start position setting	97
Endorser/imprinter setting	89

Endorser/imprinter step count setting	93
Endorser/imprinter string setting.....	98
EndorserCountDirection	90
EndorserCounter	91
EndorserCountStep	93
EndorserDialog.....	94
EndorserDirection.....	95
EndorserFont.....	96
EndorserOffset	97
EndorserString	98
Endorser/imprinter counter default setting	91
Error code and how to fix error	308
Error diffusion method	124
Error information acquisition	100, 338
ErrorCode	100, 338
Events	265
Examples and notation conventions (events)	266
Examples and notation conventions (methods).....	219, 221
Explanation of terms used.....	341

F

Fading compensation setting.....	101
FadingCompensation	101
FeederLoaded	227
File format setting	109
File name setting	105
File overwrite setting.....	155
File serial number setting	102
FileCounter	102
FileCounter1	103
FileCounter2.....	103
FileCounter3.....	103
FileName	105
FileName1	107
FileName2	107
FileName3.....	107
FileType.....	109
Filter	111
FilterSaturationSensitivity	113
Flatbed	161
Flatbed support information acquisition	130
Flip Vertical setting	137
FrontBackDetection.....	114
FrontBackMergingEnabled	115
FrontBackMergingLocation.....	116
FrontBackMergingRotation	117
FrontBackMergingTarget.....	118
FrontBackMergingTargetMode.....	119
FrontBackMergingTargetSize	121

G

Gamma.....	122
Gamma adjustment setting.....	122
GammaFile	123
GetBitmapFromDIB	339
GetBitmapFromRAW	340
GetCapability	228
GetSerialNumber.....	229
GetSlpcTemplateCount	230
GetSlpcTemplateName	232
GetSlpcTemplateSelect.....	233

GetSourceCount.....	234
GetSourceName.....	236
GetSourceSelect	238
Getting a page number.....	157
Getting the multifeed result.....	141
GetTWAINTemplateCount.....	240
GetTWAINTemplateName.....	243
GetTWAINTemplateSelect	244

H

Halftone	124
Halftone pattern setting	124
HalftoneFile	125
Highlight	126
Highlight setting	126
HwCompression	127

I

ID card automatic detection setting	114
Image Processing Software Option230, 232, 233, 256	
Image quality automatic adjustment setting.....	16
Image scanner name acquisition	128
ImageScanner	128
Indecator	129
Initialization process	245
IsExistsFB.....	130

J

Java samples	307
Job control paper type setting.....	133
Job control setting	131
JobControl	131
JobControlMode	133
JPEG	109, 274
Jpeg compression level setting.....	134
JpegQuality.....	134

L

Left edge area setting (edge filler)	85
Left edge configuration (scanning area)	175
Left edge position setting (detection area).....	33
Length configuration (scanning area)	176
Length setting (detection area)	34
LengthDetection	135
List of events	265
List of methods	219
Long page scanning setting.....	136
LongPage	136

M

Memory output.....	281, 282
Method	221
Mirroring	137

Mode for keeping the default value for each	
image	142
Multi feed detection setting	138
Multi Image Output	109
MultiFeed.....	138
Multifeed notification setting	140
MultiFeedModeChangeSize	139
MultiFeedNotice	140
MultiFeedResult	141
MultiStreamDefaultValueMode.....	142
MultiStreamFileNameMode	144
MultiStreamMode	145
MultiStreamPropertySetting.....	273

N

NegotiateCapabilities.....	276
Noise removal setting	149
NoiseRejection	149
NoiseRemoval	150
Notes on a process written in an event handler..	266
Notification of the identified forms	267
Notifies whether or not the document is loaded	
on the ADF.....	227

O

Obtaining a scanner serial number.....	229
OCR smoothing / background removal	
configuration	205
OpenScanner	245
OpenScanner2	247
Orientation.....	151
Outline	152
Outline correction setting	152
Outline emphasis.....	152
Outline smoothing.....	152, 153
Output destination of scanned data	190
Output direction	76
OverScan	154
Overscan setting	154
Overwrite	155

P

Page break notification	277
PageCount	156
PageNumber	157
PagePartition	277
Paper end detection	215
Paper feed method setting	161
PaperProtection.....	158
PaperSize	159
PaperSupply.....	161
Patch code detection notification	272
Patch code detection	166
Patch code direction	167
Patch code type.....	168
PatchCodeDetection.....	166
PatchCodeDirection.....	167
PatchCodeType.....	168

Pattern removal setting.....	169
PatternRemoval.....	169
PDF	109
Pixel type setting	170
PixelType.....	170
PreFiltering	172
Print settings window display.....	94
Priority setting during automatic paper size detection	63
Profile name acquisition (TWAIN Driver)	243
Profile number acquisition (TWAIN Driver)	244
Profile numbers (TWAIN Driver)	257
Profiles total number acquisition (TWAIN Driver).....	240
Progress indicator setting	129
Property.....	7
Property list.....	1
Property page.....	283
Property priority order.....	331
Punch hole removal mode setting	174
Punch hole removal setting	173
PunchHoleRemoval.....	173
PunchHoleRemovalMode	174

R

RegionLeft.....	175
RegionLength	176
RegionTop.....	178
RegionWidth.....	179
Relationships between properties.....	314
Report.....	181
Report file name configuration.....	182
Report output configuration	181
ReportFile.....	182
Resolution.....	183
Reverse	184
Right edge area setting (edge filler).....	86
Rotation	185
Rotation angle configuration	185

S

Samples	286
Scan mode setting.....	189
Scan page count acquisition.....	156
Scan pages configuration	188
Scan resolution setting (custom)	68
Scan with the current value	206
ScanContinue.....	186
ScanContinueMode	187
ScanCount.....	188
ScanMode	189
ScannerAvailable.....	249
ScanTo	190
ScanToDib.....	278
ScanToDibEx.....	279
ScanToFile	280
ScanToRaw	281
ScanToRawEx.....	282
SDTCSensitivity.....	191
SEE	192
Selectable edge enhancement configuration.....	192

SelectOutputSize.....	193
SelectSource	251
SelectSourceName.....	253
Sensitivity level for identifying a form when a profile is applied automatically	22
SetCapability	255
SetSlpcTemplateSelect.....	256
Setting the properties for each image	273
Setting a mode for detecting the orientation of an image.....	19
Setting a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged.....	118
Setting an initial value for each serial number that will be added to a file name when a file created from each output image is saved.....	103
Setting auto color detection which ignores background color	17
Setting continuous scanning.....	186
Setting file name acquisition (TWAIN Driver)	243
Setting file number acquisition (TWAIN Driver) ..	244
Setting file numbers (TWAIN Driver)	257
Setting file total number acquisition (TWAIN Driver).....	240
Setting for displaying the endorser/imprinter print settings window when scanning starts . 5,	94
Setting for dividing long pages	80
Setting for merging the front and back side images	115
Setting for the angle to rotate the back side when merging the front and back side images	117
Setting for the way of merging the front and back side images	116
Setting the auto image area separation.....	23
Setting the automatic border detection	15
Setting the brightness of the color blue when the brightness of each color (RGB) is adjusted separately.....	9
Setting the brightness of the color green when the brightness of each color (RGB) is adjusted separately.....	10
Setting the brightness of the color red when the brightness of each color (RGB) is adjusted separately	11
Setting the color reproduction.....	53
Setting the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back side images are to be merged	119
Setting the endoser/counter step direction	90
Setting the file name and file counter for a file created from each output image	144
Setting the file names used for each output image.....	107
Setting the length for the criteria for determining a type of document whose front and back images are to be merged	121
Setting the sensitivity for auto color detection	18
Setting whether or not to lock the TWAIN data source name	214
Setting whether to send a barcode detection notification even if a barcode is not detected...	32
SetTWAINTemplateSelect.....	257
SetupDataSourceProperties	258
Shadow	194
Shadow setting.....	194
Sharpness	195

Sharpness setting.....	195
ShowSourceUI.....	197
Sides undetected during blank page detection.....	41
Silent mode configuration.....	199
SilentMode.....	199
Simple slice binary pattern removal setting.....	200
SimpleSlicePatternRemoval.....	200
Simultaneous setting of paper end detection/background color/overscan.....	135
Skew correction.....	69
Skip blank page configuration (white pages).....	203
Skip blank pages configuration (black pages).....	201
SkipBlackPage.....	201
SkipWhitePage.....	203
Smoothing.....	205
SoftIPC Template.....	288
SoftIPC Template.....	288
SourceCurrentScan.....	206
Special document.....	131
Special document detection notification (job control).....	271
Specifying a highlight when a color hue is prioritized.....	57
Specifying a shadow when a color hue is prioritized.....	58
Specifying the brightness when a color hue is prioritized.....	54
Specifying the color contrast when a color hue is prioritized.....	55
Specifying the gamma pattern file.....	123
Specifying the gamma value (custom).....	64
Specifying the gamma value when a color hue is prioritized.....	56
Specifying the halftone pattern file.....	125
Specifying the output size.....	193
Specifying the paper length to disable multifeed detection.....	139
Specifying the parent application.....	165
Specifying the size of cropping margins.....	62
sRGB.....	208
sRGB output.....	208
Starting a scan.....	261
StartScan.....	261
Step count.....	93
Step value.....	75
Stop an Image Scanning.....	223
String.....	98
SynchronizationDigitalEndorser.....	209

T

Template name acquisition (Image Processing

Software Option).....	232
Template number acquisition (Image Processing Software Option).....	233
Template number configuration (Image Processing Software Option).....	256
Termination process.....	226
Threshold.....	210
Threshold configuration.....	210
ThresholdCurve.....	211
TIFF.....	109
Top edge area setting (edge filler).....	87
Top edge configuration (scanning area).....	178
Top edge position setting (detection area).....	36
Total number of templates acquisition (Image Processing Software Option).....	230
TWAIN data source configuration.....	212
TWAIN driver.....	240
TWAIN driver.....	243
TWAIN driver.....	244
TWAIN driver.....	257
TWAIN Template.....	288
TwainDS.....	212
TwainDSAnyPort.....	214

U

Undefined length scan configuration.....	215
UndefinedScanning.....	215
Unit.....	216
Unit of size (inch/centimeter/pixel).....	216
Use examples and conventions (Property).....	1, 7
User interface display.....	197
User interface display (for configuration).....	258
User interface exit setting.....	52

V

Version information dialog box display.....	222
Vertical line reduction setting.....	218
VerticalLineReduction.....	218
Visual Basic samples.....	290
Visual C# samples.....	290
Visual C++ samples.....	300

W

Width configuration (scanning area).....	179
Width setting (detection area).....	37

Fujitsu Scanner Control SDK
Reference Manual

First Edition September 2021

© PFU Limited 2021
